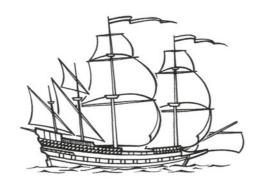
GALLEONS AND GALLEYS

JOHN F. GUILMARTIN, JR.

GALLEONS AND GALLEYS



GALLEONS AND GALLEYS



John F. Guilmartin, Jr.

General Editor: John Keegan

Cassell & Co Wellington House, 125 Strand London WC2R 0BB

First published 2002

Text copyright © John F. Guilmartin 2002 Design and layout copyright © Cassell & Co 2002 The picture credits on p. 224 constitute an extension to this copyright page.

The moral right of the author has been asserted

All rights reserved. No part of this title may be reproduced or transmitted in any material form (including photocopying or storing it in any medium by electronic means and whether or not transiently or incidentally to some other use of this publication) without the written permission of the copyright owner, except in accordance with the provisions of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 or under the terms of a licence issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency, 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1P 9HE. Applications for the copyright owner's written permission should be addressed to the publisher.

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library. ISBN 0-304-35263-2

Cartography: Arcadia Editions Picture research: Elaine Willis Special photography: Martin Norris

Design: Martin Hendry

Typeset in Monotype Sabon





 $War\ galleys\ under\ sail\ (upper\ left),\ caravels\ (upper\ right),\ and\ carracks\ (centre\ and\ bottom)\ from\ Barbarossa's\ heyday.$

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

For many years my book-after-next was to be on Renaissance warfare at sea, but next books intruded: on Vietnam, on the 1991 Persian Gulf War, and on Vietnam again. Just when and how – or if – that book might have been written I cannot say... had Sir John Keegan not asked me to contribute to Cassell's History of Warfare series and suggested the title *Galleons and Galleys*. The idea implicit in the title, that I make the design evolution of two disparate but related types of warship a major theme, made this a very different book than it would otherwise have been and a better one. I am in Sir John's debt.

This book is about war and warriors. At the visceral level – and in war when all bets are down it is the visceral level that counts – I learned much of what I know about both from those with whom I served in South-east Asia as a US Air Force rescue helicopter pilot in 1956–66 and 1975. While the experience of modern war cannot be uncritically extrapolated to earlier eras, certain essential parameters are the same: knowing when to obey and when to disobey; remaining loyal to people and things that count; maintaining a sense of humour; understanding your equipment, the weather and your own limitations. I learned a lot about those things from those with whom I flew and fought and trust that understanding shows in the pages that follow. Thanks.

More immediately, Geoffrey Parker was generous with time and advice and saved me from embarrassment on numerous occasions. Chief Warrant Officer John Sims, US Army Reserve, led me to a new understanding of Lepanto. Rear Admiral Tiberio Moro, Italian Navy (Retired); Claudio Fogu; Christopher Reed; Peter Pierson; Bill Kelsey, Pararescueman extraordinaire; Douglas St. Pierre; Lieutenant Tom Schmidt, US Navy; Luis Filipe Marques de Sousa; David Wittner; Commander Duk-Hyun Cho, Korean Navy; Major Il-Song Park, Korean Army; and Matthew Keith all rendered invaluable assistance.

Penny Gardiner was my editor for Cassell and I cannot imagine a better one. Her awe-inspiring competence and good humour made my job easier... and more fun. It was a natural fit: we both like basilisks! Malcolm Swanston's cartography, Elaine Willis's art research and Martin Hendry's layout skills transformed the book into a thing of beauty.

Finally, I am indebted to my wife Hannelore, a good Prussian who understands war and warriors better than most ever will or would want to, for giving me the support and stability to see the thing through.

Contents

Acknowledgements	5	4	THE GALLEY	
Map list Chronology	9		The evolution of the war galley; Strategy and tactics of galley warfare; The limitations of	
Introduction The age of galley, galleon and European world hegemony		5	galley warfare; Anglo-French confrontation; Christendom versus Islam; Prevesa 1538; The sieg of Malta 1565; Lepanto 1571; Spanish hegemony; Punta Delgada 1582 THE GALLEON	
Warfare at sea before gunpowder; Sluys 1340	15	,	The characteristics of the galleon; Anglo-Spanish	
WARFARE AT SEA 1300–1453			rivalry; Privateering and the Dutch revolt; The 'Invincible' Armada 1588; The Japanese invasion (Korea; Hansan Strait 1592; The Downs 1639)	
World trade and the emergence of the maritime powers; The siege of Chioggia 1379–80	31		Conclusion	
THE WEAPONS OF WAR AT SEA 1300–1650			THE TWILIGHT OF GALLEY AND GALLEON	
The gunpowder revolution at sea; The developmen of naval ordnance; Zonchio 1499; The Malabar	t		The transition from galleon to ship-of-the-line; The end of galley warfare; Conclusion	205
Coast 1503	53		BIOGRAPHIES	214
CARAVELS AND CARRACKS			FURTHER READING AND SOURCES INDEX	218
The evolution of European sailing vessels; Europea exploration and expansion; The rise of Swedish	ın		PICTURE CREDITS	224

sea power 1535-70

KEY TO MAPS

General symbols



site of battle



fort or fortified settlement



movement

Geographical symbols

urban area



urban area (3D maps)

river

seasonal river

444

canal

•

town/city

internal border

_

international border

MAP LIST

I.	The world c . 1300	18-19
2.	THE BATTLE OF SLUYS 1340	26-7
3.	South-East Asian exploration c . 1430	35
4.	The siege of Chioggia 1379	46-7
5.	The Malabar Coast 1503	78-9
6.	The Baltic 1563–70	101
7.	Channel Battles 1500–1600	117
8.	Mediterranean battles 1500–1600	138-9
9.	THE BATTLE OF LEPANTO 1571	144-6
10.	The struggle for the Azores 1582–3	152-3
II.	World empires and trade 1500–1600	166-7
12.	The Spanish Armada 1588	171
13.	The Armada engaged 31 July 1588	174-5
14.	Korea 1592	186
15.	Yi's Campaign 1592	188
16.	THE BATTLE OF HANSAN STRAIT 1592	189
17.	THE BATTLE OF THE DOWNS 1639	200-201
18.	The world in 1650	208-9

CHRONOLOGY

Dates afte	r October 1582 new style.		Negroponte (1470) and most of her		1508 only to be destroyed at Diu the
1253-84	First Venetian-		possessions in Greece.		following year.
	Genoese War.	1480	23 May–17 August:	1508	League of Cambrai:
1274, 1281	Unsuccessful invasions		Unsuccessful Ottoman		the Holy Roman
	of Japan by China's		siege of Rhodes.		Empire, France and
	Mongol Yüan dynasty.		11 August: Ottoman		Aragon unite against
1282-1302	War of the Sicilian		seizure of Otranto on		Venice.
	Vespers; Aragon		the heel of the Italian	1510	Affonso d'Albuquerque
	becomes a major sea		boot.		seizes Goa, giving the
	power.	1481	3 May: Death of		Portuguese a
1284	Battle of Meloria;		Mehmed II; succession		permanent base in the
	Genoa eliminates Pisa		contested between		Indian Ocean. Spanish
	as a sea power.		princes Bayezid and		seize Tripoli and the
1293-9	Second Venetian-		Cem. Defeated, Cem		Peñon controlling the
	Genoese War.		fled first to Egypt and		harbour of Algiers.
c. 1327	First European		then to Rhodes.	1511	Portuguese take
	gunpowder weapons.	1492	Columbus reaches the		Malacca.
1337	Start of the Hundred		New World; start of	1513	April: French defeat
	Years War.		Spain's overseas		the English in Brest
1340	24 June: English naval		empire.		Roads; first decisive
	victory at Sluys.	1494	Charles VIII of France		use of main centreline
1350-55	Third Venetian-		invades Italy		bow gun-armed
	Genoese War.		prompting Spanish		galleys.
1368	Ming dynasty		intervention; beginning	1515	Portuguese seize
	overthrows Yüan,		of the Wars of Italy		Ormuz.
	consolidates control		(1494–1559).	1516	Charles I inherits the
	over China.	1498	Vasco da Gama		Spanish throne from
1368-9	Hanseatic League		reaches India,		Ferdinand of Aragon.
	defeats Denmark-		bypassing traditional	1517	Sultan Selim I
	Norway.		spice route.		conquers Egypt.
1377-82	Fourth Venetian-	1499-1503	Ottoman-Venetian		Unsuccessful
	Genoese War, the War		War; inconclusive fleet		Portuguese attempt to
	of Chioggia.		actions at Zonchio		seize Jiddah, the port
1405-34	Chinese treasure fleets		(12 August 1499 and		of Mecca.
	under the eunuch		again the following	1519	Charles I of Spain
	admiral Cheng Ho sail		summer) cost Venice		elected Holy Roman
	the Indian Ocean on		her remaining Greek		Emperor Charles V.
	seven occasions.		bases.	1521	21 August: Fall of
1435	Ming proscription	1503	February: Vasco da		Tenochtitlán to Hernán
	on maritime trade;		Gama's victory over a		Cortez, adding Mexico
	treasure fleets		Muslim fleet off the		to Charles V's empire.
	disbanded.		Malabar Coast leaves	1522	25 June-21 Dec: Siege
1453	29 May: Fall of		Portugal pre-eminent		of Rhodes: Sultan
	Constantinople to		in the Indian Ocean.		Süleyman I expels the
	Sultan Mehmed II,	1508-09	A Mameluke fleet		Knights of St John,
	'The Conqueror'.		reaches the west coast		depriving Christendom
1463-79	Ottoman-Venetian		of India, defeating the		of its last outpost in
	War; Venice loses		Portuguese at Chaul in		the Levant.

1528	Andrea Doria transfers		the Turks the initiative		Siege of Malta; a
	Genoa's allegiance	4.5.40	at sea.		major defensive victory
	from France to Spain.	1540	Venetian-Ottoman		for Christendom.
1529	23 Sept–14 Oct:		peace treaty.	1567	Dutch resistance to
	Unsuccessful siege of	1541	24–26 October:		Spanish rule and the
	Vienna by Süleyman I;		Charles V's expedition		Duke of Alba's
	the high point of		against Algiers		suppression of
	Ottoman expansion		wrecked by a violent		Protestantism erupts
	into western Europe by		storm.	4.540	into armed rebellion.
	land.	1542-4	Barbarossa's fleet	1568	25 December: Revolt of
	27 May: Khaireddin		ravages the western		Spanish Moriscos, not
	Barbarossa takes the		Mediterranean,		suppressed until
	Peñon of Algiers.		wintering at Toulon		September 1570.
1530	Charles V installs the		in 1543–44.	1570	April: Venice rejects
	Knights of St John in	1543	First successful cast-		Ottoman demands to
	Malta and Tripoli.		iron cannon founded		cede Cyprus.
1532	Andrea Doria seizes		in England.		1 July: Turks invade
	Coron in southern	1545	19 July: Inconclusive		Cyprus; Nicosia falls
	Greece.		Anglo-French battle		on 9 September.
	16 November:		off Portsmouth; the		May: Philip II accedes
	Capture of Emperor		largest fleet action		to Venetian and Papal
	Atahualpa by		until the Armada of		entreaties to join forces
	Francisco Pizarro,	1547	1588.		against the Turks.
	leading to the overthrow of the Inca	1547	Discovery of massive		15 September: Turks
			silver deposits in Peru;		lay siege to Famagusta,
	Empire and the addition of Peru to		the resulting gusher of specie sustained		the last remaining Venetian position on
	Charles V's domains.		Habsburg strategic		Cyprus.
1533	Barbarossa visits		designs into the 1700s.	1571	23 January: Venetian
1555	Constantinople to	1551	Turks take Tripoli.	13/1	relief expedition
67	accept appointment as	1555	Charles V abdicates,		reaches Famagusta.
14.	Kapudan Pasha,	1333	leaving his Spanish		24 May: Spain, Venice
	Ottoman high admiral.		possessions to Philip II.		and the Pope formally
1534	Barbarossa retakes	1559	3 April: Treaty of		ratify the Holy League.
1001	Coron.	1007	Câteau-Cambrésis		1 August: Famagusta
1535	21 July: Tunis falls to a		ends the Wars of Italy		surrenders to the
1000	major Habsburg		and affirms Spanish		Turks.
	expedition under		hegemony over Italy.		7 October: Battle of
	Charles V.	1560	11 May: Battle of		Lepanto; Turkish fleet
1537	April-May: Ottomans		Djerba; Habsburg fleet		under Müezzenzade
C(20)(3)(3)	attack Venice and raid		under Gian Andrea		Ali Pasha crushed by
	southern Italy; Spain		Doria defeated by the		the Christians under
	and the Pope form a		Ottomans under Piali		Don Juan of Austria.
	Holy League with		Pasha.	1572	Apr-May: Expelled
	Venice.	1563-70	Northern Seven Years		from English ports,
	18 Aug-6 September:		War; Sweden defeats		Dutch privateers seize
_	Unsuccessful siege of		Denmark and Lübeck		bases in Holland,
	Corfu by Süleyman I.		to become the		reversing Alba's
1538	28 September: Battle of		dominant power in the		successes and giving
	Prevesa; Barbarossa		Baltic; first modern		the revolt a new lease
	defeats a Habsburg-		naval war.		on life.
	Venetian fleet under	1565	18 May-11 Sept:		7-10 Aug: Inconclusive
	Andrea Doria giving		Unsuccessful Ottoman		engagements off
10.7					

	Cerigo between the		Delgada; Àlvaro de		Hansan Strait; Yi
	reconstituted Ottoman		Bazán defeats a French		clears the coast of
	fleet under Uluj Ali		fleet under Philip		Japanese ships and by
	Pasha and a partial		Strozzi giving Spain		21 October has
	allied fleet under		control of the Azores.		blockaded the
	Colonna and	1583	23 July: Bazán		Japanese in Pusan.
	Foscarini.	1303	conquers Terceira,	1593	Ming army intervenes
	17 Sept–7 October:		defeating the last	1373	in Korea; with their
	Faced by the entire		Franco-Portuguese		supply lines cut and
	fleet of the Holy	1505	holdouts in the Azores.		facing starvation,
	League under Don	1585	May: Seizure of		Hideyoshi's generals
	Juan, Uluj Ali takes		northern ships in		call a truce and by
	shelter beneath the		Spanish ports gives		October have
	guns of Coron.		Elizabeth of England		evacuated Korea save
1573	5 March: Venetian-	750700000000	casus belli.		for a small garrison in
	Ottoman peace treaty;	1587	29 April-1 May:		Pusan.
	dissolution of the Holy		English fleet under	1596	June-July: English fleet
	League.		Drake raids Cádiz,		seizes Cádiz; galleons
	October: Habsburg		inflicting serious		take the measure of
	fleet under Don Juan		damage on Spanish		heavily-armed war
	seizes Tunis.		provisions and		galleys on their home
1574	24 Aug-13 Sept: A		shipping.		turf for the first time.
	major Ottoman	1588	30 May: The	1597	August: Hideyoshi's
	expedition from		'Invincible' Armada		forces re-invade Korea,
	Constantinople under		sails from Lisbon.		defeating the Korean
	Uluj Ali recaptures		19–20 June: The		navy in Admiral Yi's
	Tunis and the outlying		Armada is dispersed by		absence.
	Spanish fortress of La		a storm and driven		October: Restored to
	Golleta.		into Coruña where it		power, Yi turns the
1578	4 August: Moroccan		remains until 21 July.		tables; by year's end,
1370	victory over a		30 July: The Armada		he has the Japanese
	N 15		enters the Channel.		bottled up in Pusan.
	Portuguese royal army			1598	
	at Alcazarquivir; the		6 July: The Armada	1396	Philip III of Spain
	death of King Sebastian leaves the		anchors off Calais,		tightens the embargo
			missing its rendezvous		on Dutch shipping; the
	Portuguese throne to		with the Duke of		Dutch respond by
	the aged Cardinal		Parma; the following		trading directly with
	Henry.		night it is dispersed by		the East Indies and the
1580	February: Death of		fire ships and driven		Americas.
	Cardinal Henry makes		north.		September: Death of
	Philip II heir to	1591	Unification of Japan		Hideyoshi; the
	Portugal's throne.		under Toyotomi		Japanese negotiate
	18 July: Spanish forces		Hideyoshi.		withdrawal from Korea
	under Alba take	1592	23 May: Japanese seize		with the Chinese.
	Lisbon, driving the		Pusan; Hideyoshi's		16 December: Battle of
	pretender Dom		armies reach Seoul by		Noryang; the Korean
	Antonio into exile. All		11 June and Pyongyang		fleet under Yi
	Portuguese possessions		by 26 July.		intercepts the Japanese
	save the Azores accept		3 June: First of a series		evacuation convoy,
	Spanish rule.		of Japanese defeats by		inflicting enormous
	August: Spanish-		the Korean navy under		losses.
	Ottoman truce.		Admiral Yi Sun-sin.	1602	Incorporation of the
1582	26 July: Battle of Punta		1 August: Battle of		Vereeningde Ost-
	•				Contraction Contraction

VOC or Durch East India Company. 1604 England and Spain declare an end to hostiflities. 1605 Durch inwade the Spice Islands. 1607 25 April: Battle of Gibraltar: Durch destruction of the galleons of the Straits Guard just after Durch and Spanish envoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. 1609 9 April: Start of the Twelve Years Truce between Spain and the Netherlands, Philip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17-18 July: Durch victory at Canetee off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Durch wictory of the English seize Ormany (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormany from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Baha, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 September: A WIC fleet under Pier Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Attanaza Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the rich Brazilian sugar- 1630 The WIC seizes the rich Brazilian sugar- 1630 The WIC seizes the rich Brazilian sugar- 1640 The WIC seizes the rich Brazilian sugar- 1651 The WIC seizes the rich Brazilian sugar- 1652 The Fronde; France plauged into turmoil by rebellions nobles. 1658 and 1657, these wire the last wild defeat a WIC battle of the Consequence fought far from sight of Iand. France enters the Turks at WIC fleet off Brazil first and Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1652 The Fronde; France plauged into turmoil by rebellion spains the same day. 1658 The WIC seizes the rich from sight of Iand. France enters the Turks at WIC fleet off Brazil Siriest and Genting root declining - role. The Turks take Retimo and blockade Candia, the main Venetian position on Crete. 1659 The WIC seizes the rich Brazilian sugar- 1669 The WIC seizes the rich Brazilian sugar- 1670 The WIC seizes the rich Brazilian sugar- 1680 The WIC seizes the rich fleet off Brazilian tempts to blockade the War of Crete.		Indische Compagnie,		growing province of		Dardanelles; yielding
India Company England and Spain declare an end to hostilities. Oquendo defeat a WIC Spanish declare an end to hostilities. Oquendo defeat a WIC Spanish declare an end to hostilities. Oquendo defeat a WIC Spanish test may battle of Gibraltar: Dutch destruction of the galleons of the Straits Guard just after Dutch and Spanish enwoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. 1635 France enters the Thirty Years War and review Payris Truce between Spain and the Netherlands. 1639 15 September: The Durch under Maarten Tromp fend off a much larger Spanish fleet under Oquendo off the Flemish coast demonstrating the potential of line-ahead tactics. 1648 Spanish defeat at the hands of the Dutch under Tromp. 1649 Spanish reaction in the Pacific. 1640 Catalonia and Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1648 Review Payrish freet under Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1649 Review Payrish freet under Dutch west failed. 1640 Catalonia and Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1649 Review Payrish frees were the larger Spanish reaction in the Pacific. 1640 Catalonia and Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1649 Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1649 Review Payrish frees were the potential of line-ahead tactics. 1649 Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1640 Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1641 The Dutch task elect under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 First of a series of Wenetian attempts to 1650 Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1649 Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1649 Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 16						
Langland and Spain declare an end to hostilities. Abrolhos; the Spanish under Antonio de hostilities. Oquendo defeat a WIC fleet off Brazil; first naval battle of consequence fought far from sight of land. France enters the galleons of the Straits Guard just after Dutch and Spanish envoys had negotated a truce in the Netherlands. 1638 22 August: French fleet victory over the Spanish at Guetaria on Spain's northern coast. 1648 Spain's naval ware victory from Spain the same day. 15 September: The Dutch and spanish envoys had negotated between Spain and the Netherlands; Philip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1641 1640			1631			
declare an end to hostilities. Dutch invade the Spice Islands. 1607 25 April: Battle of Gibraltar: Dutch destruction of the gallcons of the Straits Guard just after Dutch and Spanish envoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. 1639 15 September: The Dutch under Maarten Tromp fend off a much between Spain and the Netherlands; Philip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17-18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 21 October: Battle of the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The Wic seizes the Winder of the Ware first of the Winder Candia to the Winder Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the straits and an wall and which galleys plaved a major albeit declining – role. The consequence fought far from sight of land. France enters the Tirry Years Warz. 1635 France enters the Thirry Years Warz. 1636 The France enters the Thirry Years Warz. 1638 1635 France enters the Thirry Years Warz. 1648–53 The Fronde; France plure declining – role. The Consequence found in the Netherlands. 1648–53 The Fronde; France fleet victory over the Spanish ard Rutaria on Spain's northern coast. first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1648–53 The Fronde; France off the Dutch under Maarten Tromp fend off a much between Spanish rule. 1648–53 The Fronde; France plure declining – role. The Crists and major albeit declining – role. The Consequence of a much of the Premise of the Victory over the victory over the protection of the Dutch under Maarten Commerce Company of the Venetian position on Crete. 1648–53 The Fronde fleet wictory over the protection of the Dutch under Optical and the potential of l	1604		1031			
hostilities. Dutch invade the Spice Islands. fleet off Brazil; first naval battle of consequence fought far from sight of land. destruction of the galleons of the Straits Guard just after Dutch and Spanish envoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. Netherlands. Netherlands. Papril: Start of the Twelve Years Truce between Spain and the Netherlands; Philip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Perisa, the English seize Ormuz from the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1643 May: The WIC takes the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1640 Catalonia and Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1640 The Dutch stake the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1640 The Dutch stake the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1640 The Dutch stake the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1640 The Dutch stake the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1640 The Dutch stake the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1640 The Turks take Retimno and blockade Candia, the main Venetian position on Crete. 1660 The Wic seizes the Portuguese the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1641 The Dutch stake the fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1641 The Dutch stake the fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1641 The Dutch stake the potentia	1001					
1605 Dutch inwade the Spice Islands. 1607 23 April: Battle of Gibraltar: Dutch destruction of the galleons of the Straits Guard just after Dutch and Spanish envoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. 1638 15 September: The Dutch under Maarten Tromp fend off a much between Spain and the Netherlands. 1639 15 September: The Dutch under Maarten Tromp fend off a much between Spain and the Netherlands. 1639 15 September: The Dutch under Maarten Tromp fend off a much larger Spanish fleet under Oquendo off the Flemish coast demonstrating the victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1640 Catalonia and Portugal rise in rebellion against Spanish rule. 1641 The Dutch take Malacca by siege after an eight year blockade. 1643-45 Network parts are east of the Drutguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1645 24 June: Provoked by Christian pirates operating from teakes the city the next year. 1646 Crete. 1647 The Turks take Retimno and blockade Candia, the main Venetian position on the Ottomans, a major Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 First of a series of Venetian attempts to 1649 Crete. 164						
Islands. 25 April: Battle of Gibraltar: Dutch destruction of the galleons of the Straits of envoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. 1609 9 April: Start of the Twelve Years Truce between Spain and the Netherlands; Philip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17-18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Purch Werke Years Truce; incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition reaks the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Wich and the Next and spain recognizes operating from vent when next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Pict Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1639 1635 France enters the Consequence fought far from sight of land. France enters the Consequence fought far from sight of land. France enters the Chands france enters the Chands or land. France enters the Chands France enters the Chands of land. France enters the Chands France enters the Chands or land. France enters the Chands France enters the Chands on the Chands of the Chands of the Chands of the Dutch under Maarten Tromp fend off a much larger Spanish fleet under Oquendo off the Plemish coast demonstrating the potential of line-ahead tactics. 1621 Expiration of the Dutch under Tromp. 1622 In co-operation with the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition reaks the city the next year. 1624 May: The WIC takes Company (WIC). 1625 May: The WIC takes Company (WIC). 1626 May: The WIC takes Company (WIC). 1627 May: The WIC takes Company (WIC). 1628 September: A WIC Gheet Coands and	1605					
1607 25 April: Bartle of Gibraltar: Dutch destruction of the galleons of the Straits Guard just after Dutch and Spanish envoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. Partle of Evene Spain and the Netherlands; Philip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17–18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. Expiration of the Dutch West Indies Company (WTC). 1622 In co-operation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WTC). 1641 The Dutch take English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1643 1645 24 June: Provoked by Portuguese Bahia, capital of Portuguese	1005					
Gibraltar: Dutch destruction of the galleons of the Straits Guard just after Dutch and Spanish envoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. 1639 9 April: Start of the Twelve Years Truce between Spani and the Netherlands, Philip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17-18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. Twelve Years Truce; incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese Text Baha, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1639 15 September: The Spanish at Guetaria on Spanis at Guetaria on Spanis ha Guetaria on	1607					
destruction of the galleons of the Straits Guard just after Dutch and Spanish envoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. 1638 15 September: The Dutch under Maarten Tromp fend off a much larger Spanish fleet under Outendo off the Sexpelled from Spain the Same day. 1615 17–18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Twelve Years Truce; incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1630 The WIC Seizes the Possible for the Wick and the Cortex. 1630 The WIC Seizes the Possible for the Wick and the Shah and the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 First of a series of Wenetian ports, the Under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 First of a series of Wenetian ports to the Ortomans, effectively ending the Wenetian ports to Wenetian ports to the Ortomans, effectively ending the Wenetian ports to the Ortomans, effectively ending the War of Crete. Wenetian ports to the Ortomans, effectively ending the War of Crete.	1007					
galleons of the Straits Guard just after Dutch and Spanish envoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. 1639 9 April: Start of the Twelve Years Truce between Spain and the Netherlands; Philip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17-18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Twelve West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish tracus files Victory over the Spanish at Guetaria on Spanish and Guetaria on Spanish and Guetaria on Spanish at Guetaria on Spanish fleet under Oquendo off the Flemish coast demonstrating the potential of line-ahead tactics. January: Peace of Münster ends the Revolt of the Netherlands. 1648 Revolt of the Netherlands. 1649 Catalonia and effectively removes religion as the principal European cause of war. 1652–54 War; Birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship- of-the line and line- ahead tactics. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenes; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Peace of the Pyrenes; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Peace of the Pyrenes; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Peace o			1635			
Guard just after Dutch and Spanish envoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. 1639 1639 15 September: The Dutch under Maarten Tromp fend off a much larger Spanish fleet under Oquendo off the Flemish coast expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17-18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish trageties Tromp fend off a much larger Spanish fleet under Oquendo off the Flemish coast demonstrating the potential of line-ahead tactics. 21 October: Battle of the Downs, a major Spanish defeat at the hands of the Dutch under Tromp. Catalonia and Portugal rise in rebellious against Spanish red. 1640 Catalonia and Portugal rise in rebellious against Spanish red. 1641 The Dutch take Malacca by siege after an eight year blockade. Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1643 May: The WilC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1646 Retimno and blockade Candia, the main Venetian ports, the Ottomans invade Crete. 1647 The WilC seizes the 1648 Companib (Brazilian Compario de Compario de Comparoi de Nortical de Comparoi de Comparoi de Nortical de Comparoi de Nortical de Number de Lounder Dertugal rise in rebellious nobles. 1648 Companibi Grazil de Companio de Compan			1033			
Dutch and Spanish envoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. Netherlands. Netherlands. Netherlands: Phillip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17–18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1639 15 September: The Dutch Amarten Tromp fend off a much Dutch under Maarten Tromp fend off a much (Brazilian Commerce Company) chartered in Lisbon to oppose the WIC. 1648 Companhia Geral do Comércio do Brasil (Brazilian Commerce Company) chartered in Lisbon to oppose the WIC. 1649 Münster ends the Audico off the Dutch under Tromp. 1640 Spanish fleet under Oquendo off the Portugal rise in rebellion against Spanish ule. 1640 Catalonia of Under Amarten Tromp fend off a much (Brazilian Commerce Company) chartered in Lisbon to oppose the WIC. 1640 Münster ends the Münster ends the Netherlands. 24 October: Battle of the Dutch under Tromp. 1640 Catalonia of Universal demonstrating the portential of line-ahead tactics. 24 October: Battle of the Dutch under Tromp. 24 October: Battle of the Dutch under Tromp. 24 October: Treaty of Westphalia ends the Thirty Years War and effectively removes religion as the principal European cause of war. 1640 Spanish rule. 1641 The Dutch take Malacca by siege after an eight year blockade. 1652—54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-ahead tactics. 1652—54 Last Dutch planters in Brazil surrender. 1658 Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Frances plunder in turbour demonship of the Unident plunder in turbour demo		(1.77)	1638	•		
envoys had negotiated a truce in the Netherlands. 1639 Spanish at Guetaria on Spain's northern coast. 15 September: The Dutch under Maarten Tromp fend off a much larger Spanish fleet under Oquendo off the Flemish coast expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17–18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese Portuguese Portuguese Razil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the Portuguese in The WIC seizes the WIC. 1640 Dutch under Maarten Tromp fend off a much larger Spanish fleet under Oquendo off the Flemish northern coast. 1648 Companish Geral do Comércio do Brasil (Brazilian Commerce (Brazilian Commerce WIC). 1648 Companish Geral do Comércio do Brasil (Brazilian Commerce (Brazilian Commerce Under Nather anuch of the Elimish foest will be verified off a much larger Spanish fleet under Oquendo off the Flemish coast demonstrating the potential of line-ahead tactics. 1648 Company (WIC). 1640 Spanish fleet under Oquendo off the Flemish coast demonstrating the potential of line-ahead tactics. 1640 Catalonia and Portugues free in rebellion against Spanish rule. 1640 Catalonia and Portugues free in rebellion against Spanish rule. 1641 The Dutch take Malacca by siege after an eight year blockade. 1642 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese free in mach larger spanish rule. 1643 All the Minister ends the Revolt of the WIC. 1644 War; The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese in dependence. 1645 All the Minister ends the Thirty Years War and effectively removes religion as the principal European cause of war. 1659 Portuguese in dependence			1036		1648_53	
a truce in the Netherlands. 1639 5 September: The Durch under Maarten tesame day. 1615 17–18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Dutch WIC. 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC field under Provoked by Capinish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1639 Spain's northern coast. 15 September: The Durch mater Maarten Tromp fend off a much larger Spanish fleet under Ormp fend off the Flemish coast demonstrating the potential of line-ahead tactics. 1640 Catalonia and Portugal rise in rebellion against Spanish rule. 1641 The Durch take Malacca by siege after an eight year blockade. Inconclusive Danish Swedish naval war. 1652–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship- of-the line and line- adead tactics. 1659–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship- of-the line and line- adead tactics. 1659–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship- of-the line and line- adead tactics. 1659–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship- of-the line and line- adead tactics. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; independence. 1669 August: Venetian surrender Compani) (Brazilia of Company (MIC). 1650 August: Venetian Surrender Compani) (Brazilia of Companis (Brazilian Commerce Company) chartered in Lisbon to oppose the WIC. Laba (Dithument of the Under Tromp. 1640 Catalonia and Portugal rise in rebellion against Portugal r					1040-33	
Netherlands. 1639						
1609 9 April: Start of the Twelve Years Truce between Spain and the Netherlands; Philip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17–18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1643 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 First of a series of Wirenam attempts to 1647 First of a series of Wirenam attempts to 1649 Certe. 1669 May: The WIC seizes the War of Crete. 1669 War of Crete. 1667 War of Crete. 1669 War of Crete. 1660			1639		1648	
Twelve Years Truce between Spain and the Netherlands; Philip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17–18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the Tromp fend off a much larger Spanish fleet under Oquendo off the Lisbon to oppose the WIC. January: Peace of Münster ends the Revolt of the Netherlands. 24 October: Treaty of Westphalia ends the Inity Years War and effectively removes religion as the principal European cause of war. 1652–54 First Anglo-Dutch Wa	1609		1037		10-10	
between Spain and the Netherlands; Philip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17—18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Twelve Years Truce; incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC flees at Manazas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the 1630 The WIC seizes the 1647 First of a series of Venetian attempts to Index Oquendo off the under Oquendo off the Under Oquendo off the Under Coasta of the Dush Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Adenous a will. Idabon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Alexon WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Labon Minster ends the Revolt of the Netherlands. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Lisbon to oppose the WiC. Labon Minster ends the Revolt of the Netherlands. Adenous Alexon President at the hands of line-ahead tactics. Revolt of the Netherlands. Alexon Portugus panish spanish get at the hands of the Durch under Tromp. In corollary: Park Will and the Lisbon to panish the tactics. Revolt of the Will and the Lisbon to panish spanish the tactics. Revolt of the Will and the Lisbon and Suntarity and tactics. Revolt of the Ducha	1007					
Netherlands; Philip III ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17–18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 September: A WIC flees at Manazas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the Interest of the Morts and interest of Cate of Cate and in Adaptanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the Interest of the Morts and the Mills and the Flemish coast winder morp and demonstrating the potential of line-ahead tactics. 1821 Millor and the Shah of Portugal file of the Portugal from the purch with the Shah of Persia, the English seize operating from the Portuguese the Candia, the main Venetian position on Crete. 1828 September: A WIC flags at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1830 The WIC seizes the Vine or the Millor and potential of line-ahead tactics. 1840 Allor and potential of line-ahead tactics. 1850 The WiC seizes the Will demonstrating the potential of line-ahead tactics. 1850 The WiC subset of the Nutheralands the Netherlands. 1850 The WiC subset of the Downs, a major the Doutch of the Downs, a major of the Downs in tactics. 1860 The Wic seizes the Vicentian attempts to Will canding the will calcust the August venetian of Westplands the Will flag and at the Westplands at the Netherlands. 1870 The Wic seizes the Vicentian attempts to Will canding the will calcust the August venetian tactics. 1880 The Wic seizes the Will flag and tactics. 1890 The Wic seizes the Will flag and tactics. 1890 The Wic seize of the Preace of the						
ordered the Moriscos expelled from Spain the same day. 1615 17-18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Twelve Years Truce; incorporation of the Downs, a major Twelve Years Truce; incorporation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1622 In co-operation with Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. To demonstrating the potential of line-ahead tactics. Revolt of the Münster ends the Mexitoris. Revolt of the Netherlands. 1624 Otober: Battle of Westphalia ends the Thirty Years War and effectively removes religion as the principal European cause of war. 1625–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-ahead tactics. 1628 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1629 The WIC seizes the Venetian porst, the Ottomans, effectively ending the Venetian attempts to Wire of cret.						
expelled from Spain the same day. 1615				-		
the same day. 1615 17—18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Twelve Years Truce; incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 September: A WIC fleet at Manazas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the						
1615 17–18 July: Dutch victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; the Powns, a major first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Twelve Years Truce; incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet mext year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the 1630 The WIC seizes the 1641 Tactics. 21 October: Battle of the Netherlands. 22 October: Battle of the Netherlands. 24 October: Treaty of Westhellands of the Dutch under Tromp. 1640 Catalonia and Portugal rise in rebellion against spanish releat at the principal European cause of war. 1640 The Dutch take Malacca by siege after an eight year blockade. An eight year blockade. Candia and war. 1652–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-ahead tactics. 1652–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-ahead tactics. 1652–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-ahead tactics. 1652–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-ahead tactics. 1652–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-ahead tactics. 1652–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-ahead tactics. 1652–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-ahead tactics. 1652–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-ahead tactics. 1654 Last Dutch planters in Brazil surrender. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; e						
victory at Canete off the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. 1621 Expiration of the Twelve Years Truce; incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1643 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the Venetian attempts to 21 October: Battle of the Downs, a major Spanish defeat at the hands of the Durch Under Tromp. 24 October: Treaty of Westphalia ends the Thirty Years War and effectively removes religion as the principal European cause of war. 1652–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship- of-the line and line- ada tactics. Abasta Corbent Westphalia ends the Thirty Years War and effectively removes religion as the principal European cause of war. 1652–54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship- of-the line and line- abead tactics. Abasta Tucte, Inconclusive Danish Of-trib line and line- abead tactics. Abasta Tucte, Inconclusive Danish Of-tree line and line- abead tactics. Abasta Tucte, Inconclusive Danish Of-tree line and line- abead tactics. Abasta Tucte, Inconclusive Danish Of-the line and line- abead tactics. Abasta Tucte, Inconclusive Danish Of-the line and line- abead tactics. Abasta Tucte, Inconclusive Danish Of-the line and line- abead tactics. Abasta Tucte, Inconclusive Danish Of-the line and line- abead tactics. Abasta Tucte, Inconclusive Danish Of-the line and line- abead tactics. Abasta Tucte, Inconclusive Danish Of-the line and line- abead tactics. Abasta Tucte, Inconclusive Danish Of-the line and line- abead tactics. Abasta Tucte, Inconclusive Danish Of-the line and line- abead tactics. Abasta Tucter Abasta	1615			-		
the Peruvian coast; first European fleet action in the Pacific. Expiration of the Twelve Years Truce; incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1643—45 Inconclusive Danish— Swedish naval war. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the						
first European fleet action in the Pacific. Expiration of the Twelve Years Truce; incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1643 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the 1640 Catalonia and Portugue in rebellion against Spanish defeat at the hands of the Dutch under Tromp. 1640 Catalonia and Portugue in rebellion against Spanish defeat at the hands of the Dutch Under Tromp. 1640 Catalonia and Portugue in rebellion against Spanish rule. 1640 Catalonia and Portugue in rebellion against Spanish rule. 1640 Catalonia and Portugues in rebellion against Spanish rule. 1640 Catalonia and Portugues in rebellion against Spanish rule. 1641 The Dutch take Malacca by siege after an eight year blockade. 1643 Inconclusive Danish—Swedish naval war. 1644 June: Provoked by Christian pirates operating from Operating from Ottomans invade next year. 1645 Last Dutch planters in Brazil surrender. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. 1668 Spain recognizes 1669 August: Venetian surrender Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete.						
action in the Pacific. Expiration of the Twelve Years Truce; incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the 1640 Catalonia and Portugal rise in rebellion against Spanish rule. 1640 Catalonia and Portugal rise in rebellion against Spanish rule. 1640 Catalonia and Portugal rise in rebellion against Spanish rule. 1640 The Dutch take under Tromp. 1640 Catalonia and Portugal rise in rebellion against Spanish rule. 1652—54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-ahead tactics. 1641 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1642 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn Catalonia and Portuguese Port		-				
1621 Expiration of the Twelve Years Truce; incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1643—45 Inconclusive Danish—Swedish naval war. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 First of a series of Venetian position on Crete. 1640 Catalonia and Portugal rise in rebellion against Catalonia and Portugal rise in rebellion against 1652—54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-ahead tactics. 1654 Last Dutch planters in Brazil surrender. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. 1668 Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. 1669 August: Venetians 1660 August: Venetians						
Twelve Years Truce; incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1643—45 Incoclusive Danish—Swedish naval war. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the The Outch against rebellion against Spanish rule. 1640 Portugal rise in rebellion against seal principal European cause of war. 1652—54 First Anglo-Dutch War; birth of a new era in warfare at sea dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-dominated by the ship-of-the line and line-dominated by the Spanish—Swedish naval war. 1643—45 Inconclusive Danish—Swedish naval war. 1644 June: Provoked by Christian pirates operating from Venetian ports, the Ottomans invade Crete. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. 1668 Spain recognizes 1668 Portuguese independence. 1669 August: Venetians surrender Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete.	1621	Expiration of the		under Tromp.		-
incorporation of the Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). 1622 In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the		-	1640			religion as the
Dutch West Indies Company (WIC). In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. The Dutch take Spanish rule. 1641 The Dutch take Malacca by siege after an eight year blockade. Doft-he line and line-ahead tactics. 1624 Last Dutch planters in Brazil surrender. Send of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Crete. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Crete. 1668 Spain recognizes portuguese independence. 1669 August: Venetians surrender. Of th		incorporation of the	10000	Portugal rise in		
Company (WIC). In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the Company (WIC). 1641 The Dutch take Malacca by siege after an eight year blockade. Date of the line and line-ahead tactics. 1643 Une: Provoked by Christian pirates operating from Portuguese independence. Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Portuguese independence. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. 1668 Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. 1669 August: Venetians surrender Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete.						
In co-operation with the Shah of Persia, the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the 1641 The Dutch take Malacca by siege after an eight year blockade. Dortuguese ahead tactics. 1654 Last Dutch planters in Brazil surrender. Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Portuguese independence. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Portuguese independence. 1668 Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. 1669 August: Venetians surrender Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete.		Company (WIC).			1652-54	First Anglo-Dutch
the English seize Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the 1643-45 Inconclusive Danish— Swedish naval war. 1645 24 June: Provoked by Christian pirates Ochristian pirates Operating from Other Provided by Christian pirates Operating from Other Provided by Christian poirts, the Other Provided by Christian pirates Operating from Other Provided by Christian pirates Operating from Other Provided by Other Provided by Christian pirates Operating from Other Provided by Other Provided by Other Inconclusive Danish— Swedish naval war. 1654 Last Dutch planters in Brazil surrender. Operation on Operation on Franco-Spanish hostilities. Portuguese independence. Candia, the main Venetian position on Crete. Other Provided by Christian pirates Operating from Other Provided by Other Inconclusive Danish— Swedish naval war. 1654 Last Dutch planters in Brazil surrender. Operation of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Portuguese independence. Candia, the main Venetian position on Crete. The Ottomans, of the Ottomans, of the Ottomans, of Crete. War of Crete.	1622		1641	The Dutch take		
Ormuz from the Portuguese. 1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the 1645 1645 Inconclusive Danish— Swedish naval war. 1643—45 Inconclusive Danish— Swedish naval war. 1643—45 Inconclusive Danish— Swedish naval war. 1645 24 June: Provoked by Christian pirates operating from Venetian ports, the Ottomans invade Crete. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. 1668 Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. 1669 August: Venetians surrender Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete.		the Shah of Persia,		Malacca by siege after		era in warfare at sea
Portuguese. May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. Possible of the provided by Retimno and blockade captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. Portuguese. Swedish naval war. 24 June: Provoked by Christian pirates Operating from Venetian ports, the Ottomans invade Ottomans invade Crete. 1659 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. Candia, the main Venetian position on at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 First of a series of Venetian attempts to War of Crete.		the English seize		an eight year blockade.		dominated by the ship-
1624 May: The WIC takes Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the 1645 24 June: Provoked by Christian pirates Othristian pirates Operating from Venetian ports, the Ottomans invade Crete. 1668 Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. August: Venetians surrender Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete.		Ormuz from the	1643-45	Inconclusive Danish-		of-the line and line-
Bahia, capital of Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn Captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 Christian pirates operating from Venetian ports, the Ottomans invade Ottomans invade Crete. 1646 The Turks take Retimno and blockade Candia, the main Venetian position on at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 Christian pirates operating from Venetian ports, the Ottomans invade Crete. 1668 Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. August: Venetians surrender Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete. War of Crete.		Portuguese.		Swedish naval war.		ahead tactics.
Portuguese Brazil; a Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 Peace of the Pyrenees; end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Portuguese end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Portuguese independence. August: Venetians surrender Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete.	1624	May: The WIC takes	1645	24 June: Provoked by	1654	Last Dutch planters in
Habsburg expedition retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1630 The WIC seizes the Venetian ports, the Ottomans invade Crete. Ottomans invade Crete. 1668 Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. Candia, the main Crete. Venetian position on the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete. Venetian attempts to Venetian attempts to Venetian ports, the end of Franco-Spanish hostilities. Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. August: Venetians surrender Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete.		Bahia, capital of		Christian pirates		Brazil surrender.
retakes the city the next year. 1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1640 Crete. 1646 The Turks take Retimno and blockade Candia, the main Venetian position on at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 First of a series of Venetian attempts to 1668 Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. August: Venetians surrender Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete.		Portuguese Brazil; a		operating from	1659	Peace of the Pyrenees;
next year. 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1646 Crete. The Turks take Retimno and blockade Candia, the main Venetian position on at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 First of a series of Venetian attempts to Crete. 1668 Spain recognizes Portuguese independence. August: Venetians surrender Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete.		Habsburg expedition		Venetian ports, the		end of Franco-Spanish
1628 8 September: A WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 First of a series of The WIC seizes the 1648 The Turks take Retimno and blockade candia, the main to Candia, the main to Candia, the main to Crete. The Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete. War of Crete.		retakes the city the		Ottomans invade		hostilities.
fleet under Piet Heyn captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. 1647 First of a series of The WIC seizes the Retimno and blockade Candia, the main Venetian position on Crete. Venetian attempts to Retimno and blockade Candia, the main Surrender Candia to the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete. War of Crete.					1668	Spain recognizes
captures the entire Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. Cuba. Candia, the main Venetian position on Crete. Crete. Cuba. 1647 First of a series of Venetian attempts to Candia, the main Venetian position on the Ottomans, effectively ending the War of Crete.	1628		1646			_
Spanish treasure fleet at Matanzas Bay, Crete. Cuba. 1647 First of a series of Venetian attempts to War of Crete. Spanish treasure fleet Venetian position on surrender Candia to the Ottomans, the Ottomans, effectively ending the Venetian attempts to War of Crete.						_
at Matanzas Bay, Cuba. Crete. 1647 First of a series of The WIC seizes the Crete. 1647 First of a series of Venetian attempts to War of Crete. War of Crete.					1669	
Cuba. 1647 First of a series of effectively ending the Venetian attempts to War of Crete.				The state of the s		
1630 The WIC seizes the Venetian attempts to War of Crete.			1000000			
1			1647			
rich Brazilian sugar- blockade the	1630					War of Crete.
		rich Brazilian sugar-		blockade the		



INTRODUCTION



THE AGE OF GALLEY, GALLEON AND EUROPEAN WORLD HEGEMONY

THE DETAIL ON THE LEFT, from a near-contemporary manuscript illumination depicting the 1340 battle of Sluys, vividly conveys the character of sea fights in the pre-gunpowder era: desperate contests with edged weapons, bows and crossbows, fought out behind the dubious protection of wooden bulwarks. The exaggerated size of the combatants and the prominence of armoured men-at-arms reflects the social and military dominance in Europe of chivalric élites who excelled in shock combat. The ships are cogs.

THE AGE OF GALLEY, GALLEON AND EUROPEAN WORLD HEGEMONY

The Turn of the sixteenth century witnessed the beginning of a revolution in warfare at sea. It was a European revolution, although we must categorize the Ottoman Turks as European if the argument is to make sense; we must also consider Japan and Korea, although that is getting ahead of the story. It was a revolution long in the making, but one that unfolded with surprising speed once begun. The driving force was gunpowder. The principal agents were the galley and galleon. Beginning in the Mediterranean, then spreading with remarkable swiftness to the North Atlantic and the Baltic before spanning the globe, it produced a fundamental redistribution of military and economic power and laid the political foundations of the world we live in today.



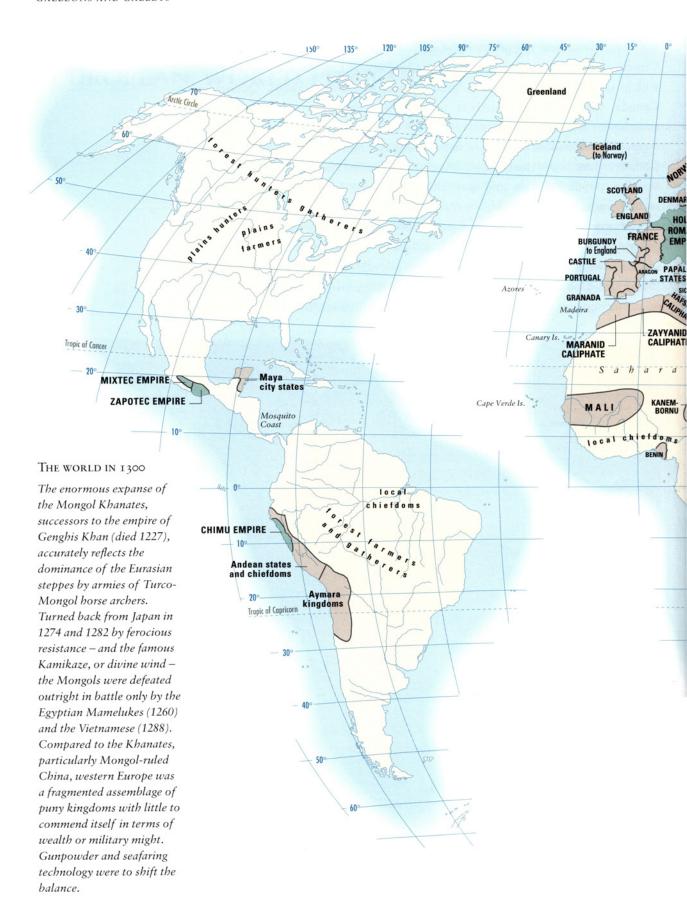
A Greek fire-armed Byzantine dromon from a twelfth-century Sicilian manuscript. Greek fire had properties unlike those of any other incendiary. It ignited on contact with water and was all but impossible to extinguish. The impact of that revolution was not limited to transient changes in the balance of power or, in the vocabulary of geopolitics, transfers of world hegemony. At the most basic level, the results can be seen on a linguistic map of the world. When our revolution began, Portuguese was spoken along the Atlantic fringe of Iberia, the Azores, Madeira and a handful of African trading posts; Spanish was spoken in central and southern Iberia and the Canary Islands; French was confined to France, the contiguous Netherlands and Switzerland; and English to the British Isles. Today, Portuguese is the language of Brazil, parts of

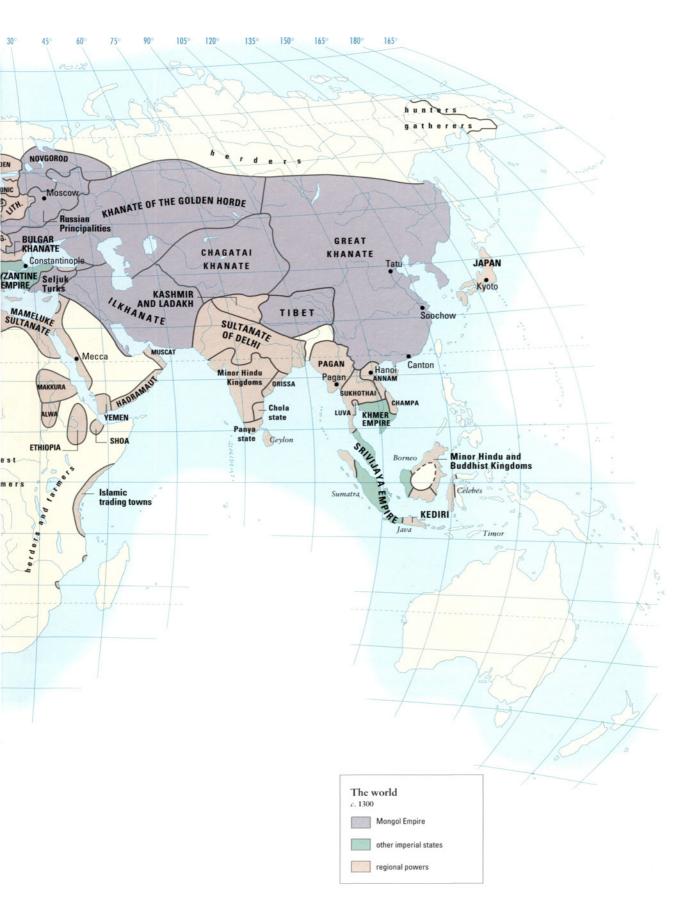
southern Africa and several enclaves in Asia. Spanish is dominant in Mexico, Central and South America, and is, after Chinese and English, the world's most widely spoken first language. Beyond France, southern Belgium, Quebec in Canada, and parts of Louisiana in the USA, French is the language of government and higher education in much of Central Africa and is still spoken in former French Indo-China. As a native tongue, English ranks second only to Chinese. More importantly, English is the international language of commerce, aviation, popular culture and journalism, and is unchallenged as the world's second language.

To note that the languages listed above achieved their importance and geographic spread as a result of their speakers' success in warfare at sea is a statement of the obvious. To be sure, the fit is not perfect. The Dutch replaced the Iberians as global hegemons in the seventeenth century, but left only a slight linguistic imprint: street names in New York and Afrikaans in South Africa. The



One of the two earliest depictions of a gun, from a manuscript in the British Museum, De Secretis Secretorum Aristotelis, dated to c. 1326; the other, in the Walter de Milimete manuscript in the Bodleian Library, shows a similar but smaller piece. Fired by a hot wire applied to the touch hole, the gun is expelling a projectile resembling an oversized crossbow bolt. The advantages of such pieces over mechanical artillery - if any - must have been slight, but gunpowder weapons were susceptible to further development in ways that counterpoise and tension weaponry was not.





French established linguistic toeholds in Asia and the Caribbean in the age of galley and galleon, but reached Africa only after the Industrial Revolution. The English language attained most of its spread after Britain's victory over France in the Seven Years War of 1756 to 1763.

Beyond that, our linguistic exercise suggests that warfare in European waters was incidental to the struggle for global hegemony, a struggle in which the winners were pre-ordained. Neither notion is sustainable. England resisted Spanish conquest between 1585 and 1603, then wrested global hegemony from the Dutch after three naval wars between 1652 and 1674. For their part, the Dutch achieved world hegemony only after winning their independence from Habsburg Spain in a bitter eighty-year struggle from 1567 to 1648, in which victory afloat was an essential component – arguably *the* essential component – of victory. When that struggle began, Spain was locked in an open-ended fight to halt Ottoman expansion in the Mediterranean, a fight won with the aid of Venice, the Pope and Spain's Italian dependencies. For her part, Venice was nearly throttled by Genoa between 1378 and 1381; survived Ottoman onslaughts from 1463 to 1479, 1499 to 1503 and from 1537 to 1540; and in 1509 weathered an assault on land by the combined forces of her Italian enemies: Spain, Habsburg Germany and Valois France.

All of these struggles were close-run things – the survival of Venice, in particular, was most improbable – and had other victors emerged our world would now be very different. Consider, too, that the Ottoman Turks absorbed an inordinate amount of Habsburg and Venetian resources that might well have been expended elsewhere, and if Ottoman is a dead language, Italian is very much alive although reduced geographically from its fifteenth-century apogee.

So we must consider losers as well as winners, not least because the latter benefited from hard lessons administered by the former. The Ottoman Turks loom large in this regard, for they used both gunpowder and galleys effectively and carved out an empire that stretched from Yemen to Morocco and threatened to overrun Europe. The Ottoman failure to contain the Portuguese in India and to overcome Spain in the Mediterranean has much to tell us about the capabilities and limitations of both galley and galleon.

Naval historians in the Anglo-American tradition have tended to view the galleon as an instrument of deep sea power projection and the principal agent of the galley's decline. The story is portrayed as a struggle between old and new – ramming and boarding versus broadside batteries and line-ahead tactics, conservatism against innovation – a struggle the galleon was destined to win. Like Athena the galleon emerges full blown from the brow of Zeus as an eighteenth-century ship-of-the-line in nascent form, and if it did not immediately sweep all before it, conservatism of mind and resistance to innovation were surely to blame. The reality was more complex. In fact, our revolution was sparked by the development of the Mediterranean war galley, the first warship capable of bringing heavy guns effectively to bear. Carracks, the prestigious sailing warships



European men-at-arms about to embark for a sea voyage, from a late fifteenth-century illuminated edition of Iean Froissart's Chronicles. Their importance to the composition reflects the artist's social priorities, as does the accuracy with which their arms and equipment are depicted, and the clearly subservient position of the footmen. By contrast, the ships and harbour facilities are naïvely drawn. Note, however, the sheaves of gads - iron javelins - in the fighting tops, an accurate commentary on the nature of combat at sea.

of the day, mounted more heavy guns, but could not stand up to cannon-armed galleys. Not until the 1590s did galleons successfully challenge galleys in stand-off artillery duels, and even then the galley retained its tactical viability.

In short, the story of galleon and galley is far more involved – and far more interesting – than traditional interpretations would have us believe. And the actors in the drama, when viewed through the lens of their own knowledge and experience rather than that of the age of Nelson, were a remarkably competent lot. We shall keep them in mind as we proceed: commanders, mariners and fighting men; and the smiths, shipwrights and gun-founders who constructed the tools of their trade.

To understand how our revolution played out we must start with gunpowder. Gunpowder reached Europe from China during the Mongol invasions of the thirteenth century, or so the evidence suggests. The earliest European formulae for gunpowder date from the mid 1200s (Roger Bacon's celebrated recipe dates from 1252), while the earliest evidence for European firearms dates from about 1300 or a bit later, roughly coincident with the first stirrings of the Italian Renaissance. Prior to 1300 innovation flowed from East to West: algebra, the zero, decimal notation, Arabic numerals, paper, the compass and gunpowder. The years around 1300 mark intellectual slack water. Thereafter, innovation flowed from West to East, gradually at first, with such seemingly trivial innovations as the steel crossbow and wrought-iron anchor shanks, and then with accelerating velocity and enormous consequences. The remarkably swift success of European smiths in harnessing gunpowder, long known in China but less effectively exploited, is symptomatic.

The earliest guns were feeble weapons, and their advantages over bows, crossbows and trebuchets were slight. Their most important advantages lay in their potential, for gunpowder weapons could be dramatically scaled up in size and power and, as it turned out, efficiency. But that was neither readily evident nor easily achieved, for the intellectual and physical barriers were formidable. In building to withstand extremes of stress, strain and temperature, the chambers of guns, particularly large guns, posed by far the most demanding challenge faced by the medieval smith ... or by the modern engineer until the advent of high-pressure steam engines and the Bessemer steel process. To complicate matters, the design and use of gunpowder weapons at sea posed problems that were very different from those on land and less easily solved.

Challenged to combine the power of heavy gunpowder ordnance with the advantages of water transport, European shipwrights and gun-founders arrived at two solutions: first, the cannon-armed Mediterranean war galley that emerged shortly after 1500, and second, the fully developed galleon that came on the scene some three to four decades later. Given wooden hulls, canvas sails, wrought-iron fittings and heavy ordnance of cast bronze, the galley and the galleon represented optimum solutions. The pages that follow examine how that came to be, and with what consequences.

SLUYS, 1340

This battle was right fierce and terrible, for the battles on the sea are more dangerous and fiercer than the battles by land, for on the sea there is no reculing nor fleeing, there is no remedy but to fight and to abide fortune, and every man show his prowess.

Jean Froissart

At the dawn of the gunpowder age, the waters of northern Europe were ferociously dangerous, and not just because of the narrow margin between survival and death in the ceaseless struggle against the sea. The king's writ



A remarkably realistic depiction of a sea fight between two cogs, dated to c. 1300-1320 by details of the armour and the ships' construction. The picture emphasizes the importance of shock combat as the ultimate arbiter of boarding fights, although the two archers, identifiable as English longbowmen by the size of their bows and their full draw to the ear, seem to be playing a major role in the fight.

stopped at the water's edge, and the only justice available to victims of piracy—those who survived—was that of retaliation. Unlike the Mediterranean, there was no market in slaves, and those robbed at sea were ordinarily murdered and tossed overboard. While raiders and invading armies were commonly transported by ship, sea battles proper were infrequent, and those that occurred were rarely decisive. This was due partly to resource limitations—war at sea was notoriously more expensive than war on land, particularly in terms of capital expenditure, and northern commercial economies were less developed than those of the Mediterranean—and partly a function of the limited weatherliness and manoeuvrability of northern ships. Of these, the dominant type was the cog, a beamy, high-sided vessel, with a single square sail and sternpost rudder, fitted with fighting castles at bow and stern when armed for war. Municipalities and monarchs built and operated sailing ships, but these were few in number; war fleets consisted mostly of impressed merchant vessels placed under royal orders and filled with fighting men.

Northern war fleets also included oared vessels, clinker-built barges (confusingly also called galleys) and true Mediterranean war galleys. Most of the latter were Genoese in the service of the French, although galleys were constructed for the French crown in the Clos des Gallée, the royal galley ships, in Rouen from 1294. The limited seaworthiness of these vessels generally restricted their use to the spring, the summer and the early autumn, but they were well suited for amphibious raids and were particularly useful in the Channel, where their oars provided solution to the swift tides and where short distances mitigated the effects of their limited stowage space for provisions and water.

The seal of Winchelsea with a nef, descended from lap-strake Viking ships and with the same basic construction and side rudder. The fore and aft fighting castles are probably temporary. The spars and rigging are accurately depicted, with powerful back stays to resist the forward thrust of the sail and braces (the lines hanging from the ends of the yard) to control it in the horizontal plane.

An English fleet landing at Lisbon during the time of the Hundred Years War, from a near-contemporary illuminated manuscript. A significant function of fleets at the time was to convey important persons and delegations to their destinations, though the vagaries of wind and weather made the business an uncertain one. As usual, the medieval artist's focus is on noble personages.

Strategic possibilities were constrained not only by the awkwardness of handling fleets of impressed ships of varying capabilities, but by the tendency of rulers to view ships and fleets purely as transport. Among the northern powers only the Hanseatic League (Hanse) and France – about which more below – could match the Mediterranean maritime city states in strategic sophistication. Exploiting a unity of purpose fuelled by common economic self-interest, and taking advantage of a ready supply of capable ships and skilled mariners, the Hanse could mobilize war fleets to considerable strategic effect, interdicting enemy shipping in conjunction with trade embargoes. This could be highly effective. Between 1368 and 1369, for example, in a war with Denmark and Norway over trading privileges, the Hanse sacked and burned Copenhagen and starved Norway into submission by cutting off her grain supply, forcing Denmark to sue for peace. A further example was the dispatch in 1374 of a fleet to ravage England's coast in response to Edward III's revocation of Hanseatic trading privileges. The nautical equivalent of a chevauchée, a mounted raid intended to destroy productive resources and discredit the enemy ruler, it had its desired effect: Edward caved in. In retrospect, coastal incursions of ships filled with heavily armed and rapacious seamen must have been every bit as frightening and destructive as similar onslaughts by mounted knights, archers and billmen on land, and with similar strategic results.

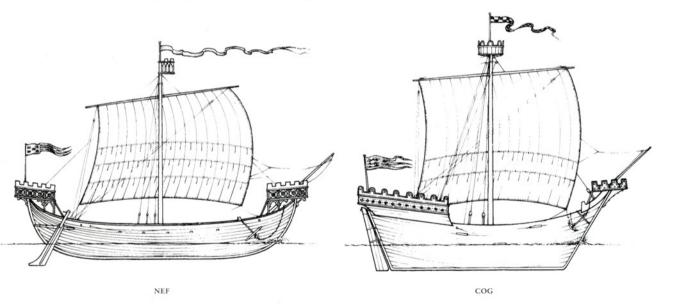


But before the advent of naval guns with hull-smashing potential, the Hanse did not commonly engage in sea battles, for the war of economic attrition at which they were masters was strategically far more effective. We must therefore look elsewhere for a case study of an early northern sea battle, and there is no more instructive example than Sluys. The most famous and best-documented naval engagement of the Hundred Years War (1337–1453), Sluys was fought on 24 June 1340 off the Flemish coast by a Franco-Genoese fleet attempting to prevent an English fleet under King Edward III from transporting his army to Flanders.

Following the outbreak of war between France and England in 1337, King Philip VI of France assembled a credible naval force, drawing on the resources of his Breton and Norman vassals and hiring galley squadrons from Monaco and Genoa. He pursued a co-ordinated strategy with his Scottish and Castilian allies, savaging the English coast and commerce. Edward, in turn, sought to exploit England's dynastic and commercial ties in Flanders where, in 1339, he fought an inconclusive land campaign, unsuccessfully laying siege to Cambrai. Meanwhile, Philip mobilized a sizeable fleet to invade England, with French and Genoese galley squadrons ravaging England's coasts. Adding insult to injury, Edward's two largest ships, *Cog Edward* and *Cristofer* were caught in French ports and captured. Fortunately for Edward, storms dispersed Philip's invasion fleet, and he lost most of his Genoese galleys to mutiny for non-payment.

SAILING VESSELS

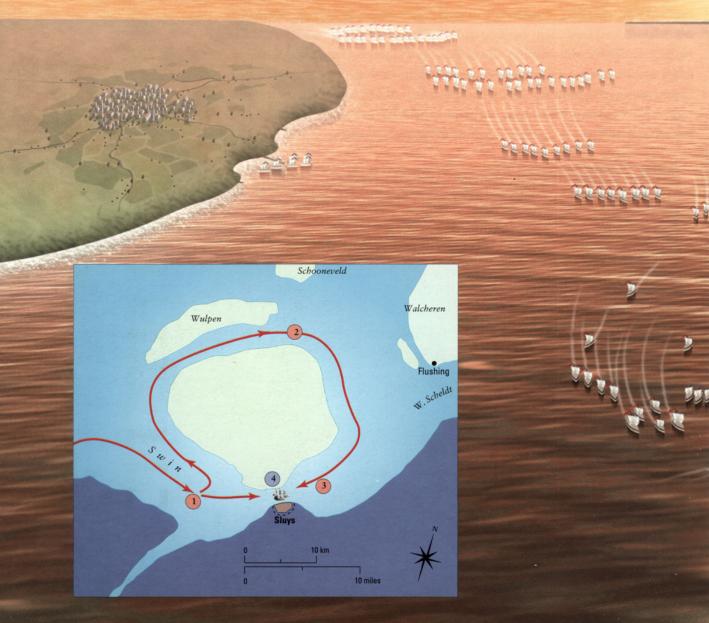
From about 1300 the nef gave way to the cog as the dominant sailing vessel for trade and war in northern waters, save in Scandinavia and Scotland's Western Isles. Here, descendants of the nef fitted with sternpost rudders hung on into the sixteeenth century. Cogs could be built larger than nefs and were more efficient bulk carriers. The principal drawback of both nef and cog was reliance on a single sail, giving their crews little flexibility in working against adverse winds.



Edward returned to England in February 1340 and by June had assembled a fleet of some 120 to 160 vessels, mostly cogs, which sailed on 22 June. Accurately perceiving his intentions, the French lay in wait, anchored off Sluys. The English sighted the Franco-Genoese fleet, of 202 sailing vessels, 6 galleys and 22 barges carrying some 40,000 men, the next afternoon. The English were outnumbered: Froissart says by four to one, which is probably as close as we can get, for comparing numbers of ships of heterogeneous types, many of them small, tells us



- 23 June: English fleet sights French fleet in late afternoon
- 2 English fleet work their way around the French during the night
- 24 June: English fleet attack in the morning with the sun behind them
- 4 French fleet lashed together at anchor close in shore



THE BATTLE OF SLUYS 1340

The sources for Sluys are frustratingly vague about the movements of the English. All we know for sure is that the two fleets sighted one another late in the afternoon of 23 June 1340 and that the English somehow managed to work their way around the French during the night to attack from the north-east at dawn. In this, they were aided by

the nearness of the summer solstice – the date of the sun's northernmost ascent into the heavens – which allowed them to navigate by twilight throughout the evening. That advantage aside, King Edward's fleet was thoroughly heterogeneous and it is unlikely that all of his ships proceeded by the same route or arrived at the same time.

What is clear is that the core of his war fleet attacked at dawn with the sun dead behind them, as shown below based on calculations from modern navigational tables. A last minute change of course was needed to extract full advantage from the sun's blinding rays. Edward, suitably advised, gave the appropriate orders and the rest is history.

Flushing



little. The Genoese galley commander argued for an active pursuit, but the French admirals elected to chain their vessels together as a floating fortress, with *Cristofer*, filled with Genoese crossbowmen, in the forefront. The English worked their way around the French during the night, approaching them at dawn from the north-east with the wind on their starboard quarter. Edward marshalled his fleet with the largest ships in front, in groups of three – one ship filled with men-at-arms flanked by two filled with longbowmen – in imitation of the tactics that he had so successfully used against the Scots at Halidon Hill seven years earlier. Smaller ships filled with longbowmen followed as a mobile reserve. The vessels bearing the ladies of the court, with an archer escort, kept well to the rear.



On sighting the allies the English altered course, veering off to attack with the sun at their backs. Misunderstanding the purpose of the manoeuvre – to force the French and Genoese crossbowmen to fight with the sun in their eyes – the French concluded that the English were withdrawing, sounded their horns to signal the attack and were apparently in some disarray when the English struck. The ensuing battle resembled a siege, with the ships' castles and bulwarks substituting for siege towers and crenellated walls, albeit with the ferocity peculiar to sea battles noted by Froissart. Characteristically for medieval battles – and chronicles – the action revolved around the larger ships and most important personages. The English forced their way aboard *Cristofer*, killing her crew and

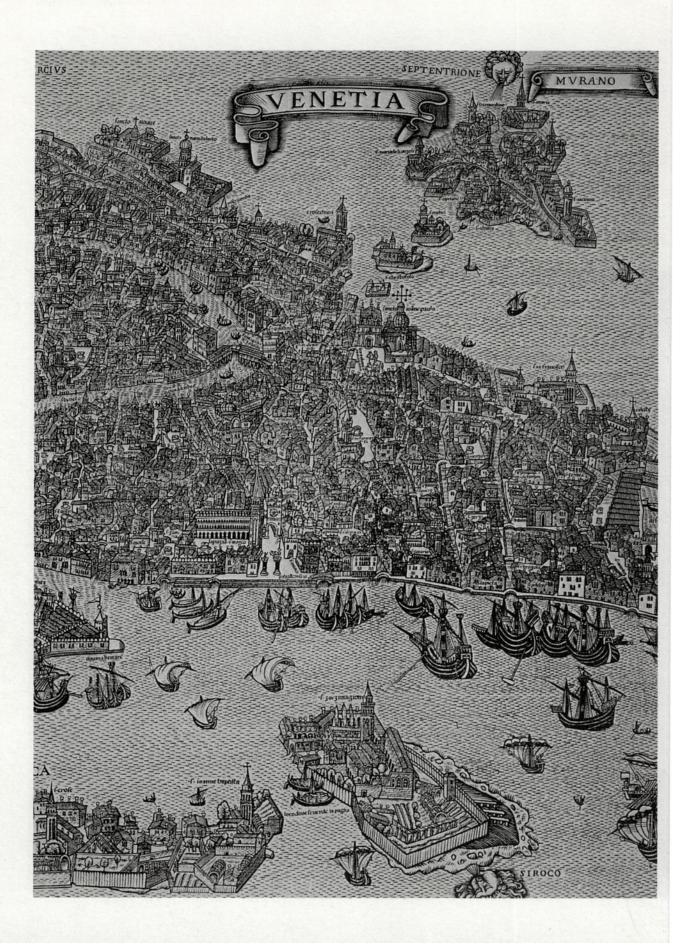
thereafter using the vessel's height to good advantage. Although the English benefited enormously from the power of the longbow, the battle still went on until afternoon.

French losses were heavy: 190 ships and 16-18,000 men. Only the galleys and barges escaped. Tactically, Sluys was a brilliant English victory. Strategically, the results were equivocal. On the positive side, the heavy French losses of ships and men effectively ended the invasion threat, and English armies were able to move to and from France more or less unimpeded. Edward's Flemish strategy proved a failure, becoming bogged down in ineffectual sieges and the monetary demands of halfhearted allies. In 1341, the geographic focus of the war shifted when France and England intervened in a dynastic struggle in Normandy. Whether by accident, as historian Nicholas Rodger argues, or design, Edward invaded Normandy in 1346 and found a winning strategy of provoking decisive battle by launching chevauchées deep into French territory. For the balance of the war, English fleets served mainly to transport armies and their impedimenta to France, which was no mean feat, particularly where thousands of horses were involved, but was hardly decisive in a naval sense. French galleys continued to raid England's coast, but in the final analysis the decisive element of sea power in the Hundred Years War was the control of ports, an area in which French land power eventually prevailed.

Sluys is thus illustrative of the limits of fourteenth-century sea power in northern waters. It also shows a certain English facility with combat afloat, a confidence and competence in shiphandling and tactics that go far to bring victory under adverse circumstances. It is perhaps worth noting in this context that Edward III, whatever his abilities as a naval strategist, was one of the few medieval kings personally to command at sea. These considerations suggest, though they hardly prove, an English closeness to the sea that we shall encounter again.

Another depiction of Sluys, from a late fifteenth-century illuminated edition of Froissart's Chronicles. Although the men-at-arms wear armour in a style of a century after the battle, it conveys essentials of the fight: the advantage of shooting from above enjoyed by men in the fighting tops, the threat of drowning for those who lost their footing leaping from ship to ship, and the incredibly crowded quarters with no room for retreat or escape. A critical aspect of the battle not adequately shown is the all-important fight for fire superiority between low-born English longbowmen and French and Genoese crossbowmen that went far to determine the battle's outcome.





CHAPTER ONE



WARFARE AT SEA 1300-1453

THE PORT OF VENICE, here in a sixteenth-century perspective rendering, was Europe's most important commercial entrepôt from the high middle ages until the rise of Antwerp and Seville following the establishment of Spain's and Portugal's overseas empires. Venice's unique geographic situation, cut off from the mainland, rendered her safe from land invasion, while her republican form of government, although hardly egalitarian, gave all segments of society a stake in her survival and prosperity. The glut of shipping shown here is emblematic of Venice's economic importance and strategic resilience.

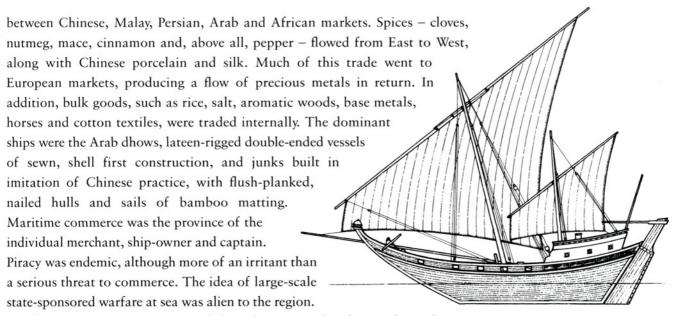
Warfare at Sea 1300–1453

Before the MIDDLE of the fifteenth century warfare at sea was waged within discrete regional spheres. There were strong commercial links between contiguous spheres, constituting a global trade network that extended from the Sea of Japan to Europe's Atlantic littoral. There was, however, little military interaction among them. Each sphere's geographic, economic and cultural peculiarities drove ship design along distinctive paths, and each had its characteristic technologies of war. Perhaps most importantly, the attitudes of ruling élites towards maritime commerce and warfare at sea fundamentally differed. These spheres were as follows.

The Indo-Arab sphere, encompassing the Indian Ocean, Persian Gulf and Red Sea, and extending from the east coast of Africa to the Straits of Malacca, was dominated commercially by princely emporia that served as transfer points

Depiction from an illuminated Arabic manuscript of a trading vessel, probably a dhow, bound from Basra to Oman. Arab seafarers were remarkable for their nautical skills and commercial acumen and in early medieval times traded directly with China. By the fifteenth century they had been largely replaced on eastern routes by Malay and Chinese mariners and seldom ventured further east than India and, rarely, Malacca.





The Malay sphere encompassed the Indonesian archipelago and met the Indo-Arab and Chinese spheres in the Straits of Malacca. The western spice trade was entirely dependent on exports from the Spice Islands in eastern Indonesia – cinnamon, from Ceylon (Sri Lanka), was the only significant exception – and there was a substantial trade in pepper with China. Otherwise, trade patterns and commodities resembled those of the Indian Ocean. The princely states that dominated the region politically considered commercial profit an important element of power and on occasion launched invasion fleets against one another. That aside, state-sponsored warships were not used to project political power or to control trade in any systematic way. Chinese-style junks were used for long-distance bulk trade, but the dominant ship type was the relatively small, multi-hulled jukung. Merchants' tax revenues were appreciated and sailors accommodated, but they rarely benefited from state sponsorship or protection, except when in port.

The Chinese sphere stretched from the Sea of Japan to the Straits of Malacca. China was culturally and economically dominant in the region and had the potential for naval mastery, a potential that was actually realized under the southern Sung dynasty (1127–1279), although we know little about the details. By the thirteenth century, as travellers Marco Polo and ibn-Battutah attested and nautical archaeologists have confirmed, junks engaged in long-distance trade were as stoutly built and as seaworthy as any ocean-going vessel afloat. But with few exceptions, after the Sung dynasty, China's rulers focused their attention on terrestrial affairs. Of critical importance, the mandarins (the Confucian literati responsible for day-to-day governance) were at best ambivalent about overseas trade, particularly when conducted by Chinese. After overthrowing the Sung dynasty, the Mongol Yüan dynasty (1260–1368) mobilized Chinese and Korean shipyards and mariners to mount massive invasions of Japan in 1274 and 1281. Both invasions failed, and in the ensuing years the Yüan became

ARAB BAGHLA

Like dhows but larger, baghlas were built shell first with sewn planking and had lateen sails and stern rudders. Such vessels plied the Indian Ocean in early modern times, ranging as far west as Madagascar. Well suited for extended reaches on the same tack, their lateen rigs were not well suited for frequent tacking in constricted waters.

SOUTH-EAST ASIAN EXPLORATION

Ming China's brief flirtation with overseas expansion provides unequivocal evidence of the remarkable competence of Chinese shipwrights, navigators and sailors. Chinese mariners had long traded in the same waters without official sanction, but seafarers ranked low in the Confucian social hierarchy and received little attention from court historians and chroniclers. The inset shows an early sixteenth-century Portuguese nao silhouetted against a nine-masted Ming treasure ship.

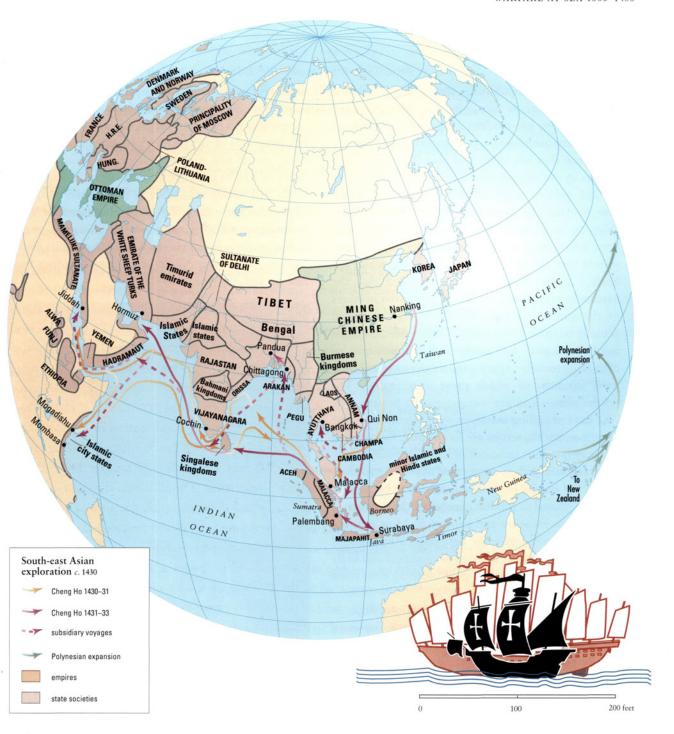
increasingly sinicized and turned their backs to the sea. Mandarin attitudes prevailed thereafter, save for a brief interlude under the first emperors of the Ming dynasty (1368–1644).

The Ming were an anomaly, a native dynasty founded by warrior kings who sought actively to expand China's boundaries by land and suzerainty by sea. They did so at sea by means of treasure fleets, so called because one of their main

functions was to collect tribute in the form of ambassadors, precious metals, gems, exotic animals and other esoterica. Enormous in scope and competent in execution, these fleets sailed seven times between 1405 and 1434, under the eunuch admiral Cheng Ho, visiting Java and destinations as far afield as Ceylon, the Persian Gulf, the Red Sea and the Madagascar Channel. These fleets have acquired semi-legendary status and must therefore be put in perspective. The dimensions commonly given for the largest of Cheng Ho's ships, 450 feet long and 184 feet in breadth, are not only implausibly broad relative to length, but physically impossible, the result of erroneous interpolations by later Chinese authors and uncritical acceptance by western scholars. Still, they were impressive enough, sporting nine masts, measuring some 204 feet by 37 feet and displacing 1,000 to 1,100 tons. Some contemporary European vessels were larger, for example Henry V of England's 'great ships' Jesus (1,500 tons) and Grace Dieu (2,100 tons), but whereas these ships were exceptional, dozens of treasure ships were produced to a standardized design. The 1405 fleet consisted of 62 large and 255 small vessels and carried 27,870 men. Except for the smaller 1407 to 1409 expedition, the rest were of similar magnitude. The administrative and logistical competence required to outfit, man and provision such fleets speaks for itself. Moreover, the treasure fleets were not pure exercises in peaceful diplomacy, but suppressed piracy in the Straits of Malacca and intervened militarily in dynastic struggles in Java and Ceylon. We know little about the armament of Cheng Ho's ships, but Ming warships of the 1390s are known to have carried cannon that were at least equal in size and power to contemporary European naval ordnance. More importantly, seagoing junks, in contrast to Arab dhows and Malay jukungs, had hulls that could have been modified to support batteries of heavy ordnance.

The treasure fleets were successful in expanding Chinese suzerainty for a time, but behind their success lay a dark reality, for the Ming emperors who launched them proclaimed a ban on private seaborne trade that forced the vast majority of Chinese deep-sea mariners into poverty, smuggling or piracy. The last loophole was closed in 1435, when the treasure fleets were banned. The ban was partially lifted in 1567, but by then the design of large, ocean-going war junks had been lost, a victim of the mandarins' suspicion of outside cultural influence. The Ming war fleet had wasted away and Japanese wako pirates, sailing in ships that were far inferior to those of Cheng Ho's fleets, had filled the vacuum, turning China's coastal districts into a depopulated wasteland.

The European sphere, extending in 1300 from the eastern Mediterranean and the Black Sea to Iceland and Morocco, had expanded by the mid 1400s to



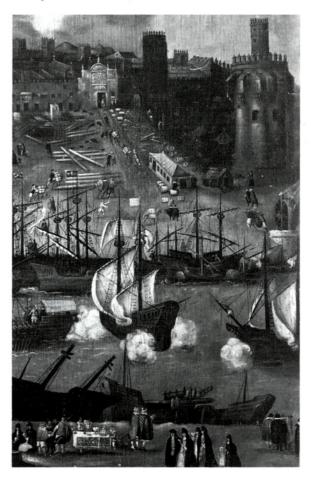
encompass the Canaries, Madeira, the Azores and a thin chain of Portuguese factories along the western coast of Africa. In fact, the European sphere consisted of three subspheres: the Atlantic, Baltic and Mediterranean – four, if we consider the residual Viking sphere – each with its own distinctive technologies and customs and each largely self-contained. There was, however, a fundamental difference between their interrelationships and those that prevailed among the non-European spheres, in that there was recurrent military interaction among them. In part this was a function of geography, for Europe is not only a

SIZE AND TONNAGE

In assessing the capabilities of warships, the most basic parameter is size, usually given in tons. Unfortunately, pre-modern usage was inconsistent and modern authors all too frequently fail to specify which ton they are using and how. The ton has its origins in the English tun, a barrel with a capacity of 252 gallons used in the French wine trade that became the dominant unit of measure for shipping in medieval Britain and western Europe from Amsterdam south. The equivalent in northern waters was the last, roughly two tons, while the botte, about half a ton, prevailed in the Mediterranean. Capacity was at first given in terms of the number of tuns, lasts or botte that could actually be loaded into a ship's hold. Later, methods were developed for using hull dimensions to calculate precisely capacities in these units (and their local variants, of which there were many). The results were - and are - economically informative. The sizes of sailing warships were calculated in the same way, but the results are less helpful, for carrying capacity is a poor indicator of military potential. By contrast, war galleys were rated according to their number of rowing banks and oarsmen. In both cases, size was related to combat capability; the question is how best to measure and express it. Most modern authors use tonnage - by definition a measure of capacity - to express the size of medieval and early modern ships, but this can be misleading even when used correctly.

The modern solution is to rate warships in terms of the weight of water they displace, expressed for convenience in long tons of 2,240 pounds avoirdupois. Unlike medieval capacity calculations, the results are not exact, for a vessel's displacement varies with the load it carries. The results are, however, meaningful and apply to war galleys as well as sailing warships. We must obtain them ourselves, however, for in medieval times only Chinese shipwrights were able to calculate displacements, and their methods were lost with the Ming dynasty's ban on ocean-going vessels. European shipwrights began calculating displacements only in the late 1600s, and for another two centuries used the results only as part of the design process. Fortunately, medieval and early modern shipwrights - at least

successful ones – were systematic and their designs consistent. Knowing the dimensions of a few representatives of a given type, we can calculate the displacements of the rest with reasonable accuracy from one or two parameters: length, breadth and depth of hull or capacity in tons, lasts or botte. We are helped in this endeavour by naval historian Jan Glete who has calculated the displacements of an immense number of early modern warships and published the results in his trail-breaking Navies and Nations: Warships, Navies and State Building in Europe and America, 1500–1860.



A Spanish convoy departing Seville for America in 1498. On the right is the royal customs house, the famous Torre de Oro (Tower of Gold), so-called for its covering of golden ceramic tiles. Spanish shipping was closely regulated, based on the categorization of ships according to their capacity in toneladas, equivalent in weight to about 62 per cent of a long ton.

peninsula, and thus accessible by sea, but a peninsula of peninsulas: Scandinavian, Iberian, Italian, Greek and Anatolian, with the British Isles as an outlier. This geographic reality not only encouraged the development of seafaring, but accustomed Europeans to the movement of ships, men and ideas over long distances. The Vikings demonstrated the efficiency of northern ships and arms in Mediterranean waters during the Dark Ages; the Crusaders exported northern methods of warfare to the eastern Mediterranean; and in their heyday the Normans moved freely between the Atlantic and the Mediterranean. Interaction among these subspheres produced the technologies of warfare at sea that are the subject of this book. By 1300 the process was well under way.

In the far north, from Norway to Scotland's Western Isles, Viking methods of shipbuilding and warfare prevailed. Longships, built shell first of lapstrake construction, served as warships, while the knarr, of similar construction, but broader beamed and more seaworthy, was the dominant cargo vessel. While these vessels remained viable in their home waters, developments to the south were steadily eroding their importance. The most significant of these was the appearance in around 1200 of the cog, a deep-hulled, double-ended vessel with a sternpost rudder, driven by a single square sail. Seaworthy and an efficient bulkcarrier, the cog dominated merchant shipping from the North Sea and the Baltic to Iberia's Atlantic coast until about 1400, when it gave way first to the hulk and then to the carrack. Cogs were easily converted into warships by erecting temporary fighting castles at bow and stern, and impressed cogs formed the core of northern war fleets throughout the fifteenth century, although Mediterraneanstyle war galleys were used in the English Channel and the Bay of Biscay from the 1200s. Fleets of cogs met in battle on occasion, as we have already seen, but cogs were used in war mainly to haul troops and interdict trade. Galleys and barges, their northern equivalents, were used for coastal raids and attacks on shipping.

Warfare at sea in northern waters was marked by a remarkable degree of strategic and operational continuity. Coastal raids and naval support of land campaigns aside, trade was the main objective. In contrast to eastern and Mediterranean waters, most trade was in bulk commodities, such as grain, timber, fish, salt, wool and wine. Until reduced to third-tier status in the 1530s, the Hanseatic League, led by the port of Lübeck, was able to enforce commercial hegemony with a mixture of interdiction, blockade and embargo. Piracy was endemic – indeed, during the early 1400s, northern pirates, the *Likendeeler* ('equal sharers'), challenged the Hanse hegemony – and, as the scale of trade increased, merchant ships commonly sailed in convoys for mutual protection.

Combat between cogs was a form of mobile siege warfare in which archery and crossbow fire from the fighting castles, supplemented by firearms from the 1370s, cleared the way for grappling and boarding. The replacement of cog by hulk and carrack did little to change this, and neither did the use of increasingly larger guns in the 1400s. Even when, as we shall see, the development of the watertight gunport permitted shipwrights to mount heavy guns low





in the hulls of carracks, sea fights continued to revolve around attempts to grapple and board. Only with the introduction of truly effective heavy ordnance from the 1510s, ironically aboard Mediterranean galleys, did fundamental change begin.

From the Crusades until the mid 1400s warfare at sea in the Mediterranean, as in northern waters, revolved around trade. The only exception of note was the War of the Sicilian Vespers (1282–7), a dynastic struggle between the Aragonese and Angevin empires for control of Sicily, which, to be sure, was commercially important. Even the Crusades had an important commercial dimension, as Venice demonstrated in 1204 by orchestrating the seizure of Constantinople (Istanbul) by Latin crusaders to undercut her rival Genoa. But the similarities between Atlantic and Mediterranean theatres mask fundamental differences, for at the dawn of the gunpowder era the technology of warfare at sea was far more advanced in the Mediterranean. and tactics and strategies more refined. Although partly a product of greater population densities and economic maturity, this was primarily attributable to the Mediterranean's benign environment. In sharp contrast with the Atlantic, the Mediterranean has no perceptible tides, and during the trading and campaigning season, from late March through to early October, the skies are generally clear and storms rare. From antiquity, favourable wind and current patterns channelled trade along trunk routes hugging the Mediterranean's northern coast, a coast flush with harbours and beaches where mariners might pull up for the night or seek refuge from storms. The water is generally clear and the bottom drops off sharply, making it possible for the mariner to approach land safely to establish his position, a process facilitated by the presence of high mountain ranges near the coast that provide convenient landmarks. These factors acted in combination to encourage the early development of maritime trade and specialized warships.

For as far back as there is reliable evidence the design of European seagoing ships tended towards two extremes: round ships for trade and long ships for war. In post-classical times, this tendency found its ultimate expression in the Mediterranean war galley, a highly refined design that evolved as an integral component of a system of warfare and trade peculiarly adapted to the Mediterranean. That system was based on fortified port cities, major centres of trade supported by hinterlands sufficiently rich to provide the wherewithal to build, man and operate fleets of war galleys. The war galley developed in

The storm of Constantinople by Venetian and Latin Crusaders in 1204, painted by Tintoretto three and a half centuries after the event. Though the artist has expunged gunpowder weapons, the galleys, arms, and equipment more closely resemble those of his day. or perhaps a century earlier, than the historical reality. Fleets, particularly Mediterranean galley fleets, were often used in sieges. Note the powerful craneauinwound steel crossbow in the right foreground.

symbiosis with the port city, defending it from attack and harassing the commerce and coasts of its enemies in a uniquely Mediterranean system of amphibious warfare. The control of outlying ports and seaside fortresses was crucial to this system of warfare, and galley squadrons were a basic means of investing and defending such places. Since galleys, and their smaller derivatives, were designed first and foremost for maximum speed under oars in calm conditions, warfare at sea had a strong seasonal character, a character reinforced by the annual cycles of agriculture, recruiting and trade.

Operationally, galley squadrons sortied in the spring and summer to raid, conduct sieges and, occasionally, to confront one another in battle. Campaigning in autumn and winter was exceptional, generally involving shorter distances and



smaller numbers. The basic ship-to-ship tactic was boarding, preferably after thinning out enemy ranks with crossbow bolts, arrows and, later, firearms. Well-armed war galleys were devastatingly effective against small merchant vessels and coastal villages. They were, however, impotent against competently armed sailing ships of high freeboard, and by the early 1400s well-armed carracks were essentially immune to attack by galleys. The appearance of bombards on the bows of galleys and castles on carracks made surprisingly little difference, amphibious trench warfare in the Venetian lagoons during the siege of Chioggia being the exception.

Few port cities were capable of maintaining and operating major galley fleets, and not all of those that could have did so. The identities and relative strengths of



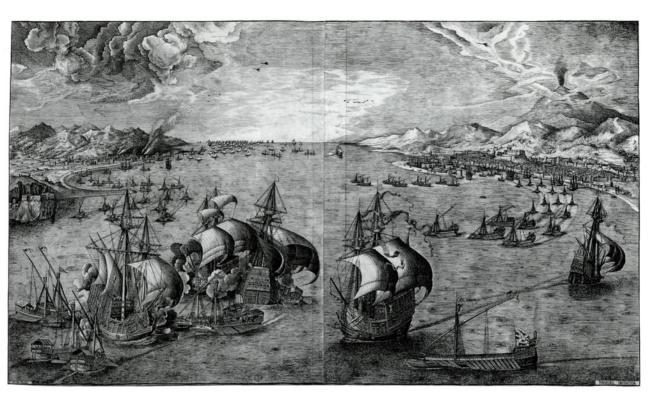
Genoa in the late fifteenth or early sixteenth century. Possessing one of the best harbours in the western Mediterranean, Genoa was strategically handicapped by the city's accessibility by land. To be sure, the approaches along the narrow coastal plain and through the Ligurian Alps were not easy, but they were passable. Genoa was thus more susceptible to outside pressure than her rival Venice, particularly after the advent of mobile siege artillery from 1494, and fell first under the sway of France and then Habsburg Spain.

Naples, one of the finest harbours in the western Mediterranean, was never the base of an independent naval power in the early modern era. The object of conflicting imperial ambitions, it fell definitively under Aragon's control in 1442, the date of the event depicted below, the entry of the Aragonese fleet into the harbour.

those that did changed with time, partly for economic reasons, partly because of changes in the scale of warfare and partly due to changes in the availability of strategic resources. By 1300, the list included Barcelona, Genoa and Venice, all benefiting from their proximity to the northern trunk routes and northern European markets. Naples and Messina possessed the wherewithal to support galley fleets, but Naples dropped from contention after the Angevin defeat in the War of the Sicilian Vespers, while Sicily, and therefore Messina, fell into Aragon's orbit. Alexandria commanded the vast resources of the Nile valley, but the Mameluke sultans, ruling from inland Cairo, were content to enrich themselves by taxing the wealth of the eastern trade in spices, medicinal herbs, porcelain and fine fabrics, bound for northern markets in Italian and Catalan bottoms. Moreover, Egypt lacked timber suitable for ships and barrels. Constantinople had lost her hinterland to the Seljuk Turks following defeat at Manzikert in 1071, and her independence to the Fourth Crusade in 1204. Although restored to Greek rule in 1261, the city dwindled to insignificance save as a trans-shipment point and guardian of the Dardanelles.

It would be an overstatement to assert that Barcelona, Genoa and Venice dominated warfare at sea in the Mediterranean between the Angevin defeat at the





hands of Aragon in 1287 and the fall of Constantinople to the Ottoman sultan Mehmed II in 1453, but not by much. Lesser powers fielded galley squadrons, some to considerable local effect. Galleys of the Knights of St John for example, operating from Rhodes, were a constant threat to Muslim coasts and commerce in the eastern Mediterranean. In the west, Muslim corsairs operating from Algiers, Tunis and a host of lesser African ports posed a constant threat to Christian coasts and commerce. The Mediterranean was a den of pirates, and the 'little war' of raid and counter-raid, seizure and extortion was constant, cutting across regional and religious lines. By increasing shipping costs the Mediterranean 'little war' worked to the benefit of the maritime nations of the Atlantic over the long term. Over the short term it was background noise in the greater scheme of things.

The big issues in European waters were contested in two overlapping arenas: the fight for commercial dominance of the northern trunk routes and the struggle between Christendom and Islam. The former was settled for a time by the War of Chioggia; the latter gradually assumed major importance, which Venice, victorious in the former struggle, was slow to recognize. The turning point was the fall of Constantinople in 1453. Until then no Muslim power had commanded a resource base of consequence along the Mediterranean's northern rim, and the Christians, fragmented though they were, held the geographic trump cards. Afterwards the Turks, from a commanding position along the trunk routes, could stock the shipyards and arsenals of Constantinople with the vast resources of Anatolia and the Black Sea. The Ottomans were soon gnawing at Venetian positions in eastern Greece and in the war of 1463–79 expelled Venice from Negroponte. The stage was set for a major showdown.

A fine contemporary depiction of mid sixteenth-century war galleys and carracks engaged in combat. In emphasizing the drama of close action, the artist has failed to acknowledge the galley's advantages in stand-off gunnery.

THE SIEGE OF CHIOGGIA, 1379-80

This new plague of artillery, developed many years before in Germany, had been brought to Italy for the first time by the Venetians during their war against the Genoese in the year of Salvation 1380, when the Venetians were defeated at sea and so afflicted over the loss of Chioggia that they would have accepted whatever conditions the victors imposed.

FRANCESCO GUICCIARDINI

The early history of gunpowder's transformation in Europe from a pyrotechnic curiosity into a propellant with serious destructive potential is obscure. Our earliest secure knowledge relates to developments in powder manufacture, gun-founding and tactics that combined with synergistic effect from about 1420 to produce a revolution in positional warfare. Fortifications, hitherto secure against all but disease, starvation and treachery, fell with disconcerting frequency to cannonballs fired in battery against the face of the wall. High walls, hitherto a source of security, became a weakness, serving only to provide additional rubble to fill the ditch. We associate this revolution with France and the reforms of the Bureau brothers, whose guns drove the English from their strongholds in Normandy to end the Hundred Years War, but its essential elements had taken hold in Iberia, Morocco, Germany and the Ottoman domains by the mid fifteenth century. Indeed, our revolution's most dramatic manifestation was the fall of Constantinople to Ottoman bombards in 1453.

This is all reasonably clear, but raises questions, for the Bureaus' guns and the bombards that breached Constantine's wall were a mature technology. That technology must have demonstrated serious potential in adolescence to justify the considerable cost of forcing it to maturity. The question is, when and where? Writing in the 1530s, the historian Guicciardini believed that the siege of Chioggia represented the first effective use of cannon on a large scale in Italy. The evidence supports him, revealing no earlier use of artillery on a similar scale, or with comparable strategic consequences, not only in Italy, but in Europe.

The War of Chioggia, from 1378 to 1381, was the fourth in a series of wars between Genoa and Venice that began in 1253. It marked the end of a multi-sided struggle among the Italian maritime republics for control of the trade routes that hugged the Mediterranean's northern shores. At stake was a rich trade in luxury goods – slaves, wax, honey, sugar, fine textiles and, above all, spices – plus, when justified by price or needed for ballast, high-value bulk commodities, such as timber, wheat, copper and tin, wine, salt, alum and wool. The struggle began in earnest with the increase in trade spurred by the Crusades and was intensified from the mid 1200s by the Italian commercial revolution. As allies of convenience, as wary rivals and in open war, Venice, Amalfi, Naples, Pisa and Genoa fought to control the flow of wealth. The increasing scale of conflict knocked tiny Amalfi from contention in the eleventh century; Naples became the capital of a terrestrial kingdom under Hohenstaufen rule in the thirteenth; Pisa

suffered crippling defeat at Genoese hands at Meloria in 1284 and then dropped out as her harbour silted up. That left Venice and Genoa locked in bitter rivalry.

The Venetian—Genoese wars took place across a period of momentous change within Europe and the Mediterranean world. They spanned the first half of the Hundred Years War, the onslaught of the Black Death, the consolidation of the secular power of the Papacy and its eighty-year captivity at the hands of the kings of France, the rise of the Aragonese empire in the western Mediterranean, the growth of the Hanseatic League and the consolidation of the Ottoman sultanate in Anatolia and the Balkans. The Venetian—Genoese wars are of considerable interest, for they spanned not only the economic, demographic and political changes noted, but changes in warfare and seafaring that were of at least equal importance. On land, the armoured man-at-arms who owed his political power to his skills of equestrian combat; who served under feudal obligation; who fought to capture his peers for ransom; and who fought as a shock combatant with lance, mace and sword, gave way as the arbiter of battle to low-born warriors who fought on foot; who fought for pay; who fought to kill; and who increasingly killed from a distance with missile weapons.

The Italians participated in these developments indirectly by hiring English and Swiss mercenaries - longbowmen, halberdiers and pikemen - for their condottieri wars, wars in which the mounted man-at-arms retained his traditional importance. But in a broader sense, the Italian maritime republics anticipated developments on land by turning early to the crossbow as an effective means of defending their ships and trading factories. European chivalric élites resisted the crossbow as a challenge to their monopoly of armed violence -Emperor Conrad III of Germany (ruled 1138-52) forbade its use on pain of death - but feudalism had shallow roots in Italy, and by the time of the Crusades Pisan, Genoese and Venetian crossbowmen were renowned for their effectiveness. In Italy, too, there was a curious dichotomy in attitudes towards warfare on land and at sea. City states that were quite content to contract their land wars out to mercenaries were at the forefront of developments in war afloat. Indeed, the upsurge in Mediterranean commerce from the mid 1200s was rooted in changes in weaponry, notably the widespread adoption of the crossbow, as well as in advances in navigation and ship design.

The Venetian–Genoese wars show remarkable strategic and operational continuity, broken only at the end. Each city sent galley squadrons to raid enemy coasts and commerce; both responded by concentrating their shipping in convoys. War fleets were dispatched to attack or protect particularly rich convoys, rarely with decisive effect. The first three conflicts were protracted wars of economic attrition. The fourth began in the same way. It ended very differently.

The Fourth Venetian–Genoese War arose out of efforts to influence the Byzantine succession and control Cyprus. Matters came to a head in 1377 when Venetian forces frustrated a Genoese attempt to seize Tenedos, key to the Dardanelles, and the following spring found both cities on a war footing. Genoa

had used the intervening months to good effect by forging alliances with King Louis of Hungary and Francesco Carrera, lord of Padua, an inveterate enemy of Venice. At first Venice held the initiative at sea, and the Venetian fleet, ten galleys under the popular and charismatic admiral Vettor Pisani – the scale of operations was small in the aftermath of the Black Death – defeated a Genoese force of similar size off Anzio on 30 May 1378. Genoese losses were serious, and the doge was deposed in the ensuing turmoil.

Despite his objections, Pisani was ordered to winter at Pola, on the Dalmatian coast. The following spring a reconstituted Genoese fleet of twenty-two galleys under Luciano Doria found him there. Although the odds were even in numbers of galleys, Pisani's ships and men were in poor condition. On 6 May 1379 Doria drew the Venetians into battle, holding a reserve out of sight until the Venetians were committed. Pisani led his best galleys in a furious assault on the Genoese centre, killing Doria,

Marghera but the Genoese reserves turned the tide.

Venice lost fifteen galleys and

Fusina

Pellestrina

Chioggia

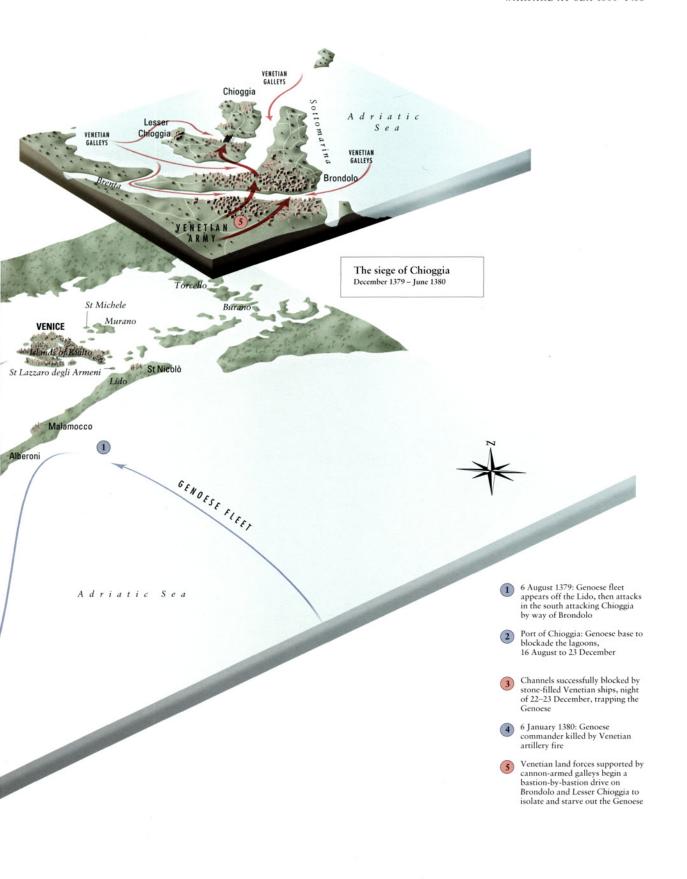
Brondolo

Brenta

THE SIEGE OF CHIOGGIA

Venice's closest brush with extinction between her semi-mythical founding in the sixth century and final dissolution at the hands of Napoleon in 1797 came in the War of Chioggia when the Genoese, with uncommon boldness, sought to starve the island republic into submission by close blockade. Under

normal circumstances, galley fleets were incapable of mounting an effective blockade because of their limited endurance and seakeeping abilities, but the seizure of Chioggia, on the doorstep of the Rialto, enabled the Genoese to do just that. The Venetian response – equally bold – is shown here.



A sixteenth-century painting of the Venetian reduction of the Genoese position on Chioggia. Though painted long after the event the details are credible. Note the close quarters. The siege and counter-siege of Chioggia involved bitterly fought amphibious engagements.

2,400 prisoners, a crippling blow. Salvaging what he could, Pisani fought his way clear with six galleys. Ordered home by the Senate, he was tried and convicted under a law that specified death for commanders who fled a lost battle. It was apparent, however, that once faced with defeat, Pisani had made the best of a bad situation and the vote was close. No doubt partly because of his popularity, Pisani was imprisoned rather than executed. On 10 June Venice dispatched a squadron of five well-equipped galleys under Carlo Zeno to raid the Genoese Riviera.



The Venetian reaction to defeat was conventional. The Genoese response to victory was anything but. Piero Doria, the new Genoese commander, spent the summer in the Adriatic refitting and incorporating the captured Venetian galleys into his force. On 6 August he appeared off the Lido with forty-eight galleys and four galiots, 'all well armed', in the words of the Venetian chronicler Daniele di Chinazzo. Venice responded in panic, fortifying the Lido, removing channel markers and blocking canals with chained beams. Orders went out for Zeno's recall. Then, striking at the heart of Venetian power, Doria launched his force



against the port of Chioggia, at the southern tip of the lagoons, intending to seize a blockading base from which to strangle Venice.

Linking up with Paduan and Hungarian forces investing the lagoons by land, the Genoese fought their way into Brondolo and Lesser Chioggia in turn, storming Chioggia on the morning of 16 August. By evening, the flags of Hungary, Padua and Genoa flew above the plaza and Genoese bombards and trebuchets defended Chioggia's water approaches. Facing ruin, Venice asked for terms. Doria rejected the overtures, boasting that he would first bridle the famous bronze horses atop their columns in St Mark's Square. Moving to mobilize every resource, the Council of Ten met widespread refusal to serve under the designated commander-in-chief, the haughty patrician Thaddeo Giustinian, and popular clamour for Vettor Pisani's release from prison. The council yielded in stages, first releasing Pisani, then appointing him second in command to the aged doge, Andrea Contarini. This took time, and in the meantime the blockade held. By winter, Venice was effectively isolated.

Under Pisani's leadership the Venetians prepared carefully, risking all on a single stroke. As night fell on 22 December – the longest night of the year – they struck, attacking Brondolo as a diversion and using the cover of darkness to extract maximum advantage from their superior knowledge of the waterways. Stone-filled cogs were towed into the mouths of the channels connecting Chioggia with the Adriatic and the lagoons and scuttled. The Genoese repelled the assault on Brondolo, but dawn revealed the extent of their defeat: the channels were blocked and the besiegers were now the besieged. Capping the Venetian victory, Carlo Zeno returned in triumph on 1 January 1380 with fourteen well-armed galleys, having wrought havoc on Genoese commerce.

But it was not yet over. The Genoese fought back with skill and determination, assaulting the Venetian bastions guarding the channels, trying to dislodge or break up the stone-filled cogs and dispatching well-heeled agents to induce treason into Venice's mercenary ranks. To make matters worse, the Genoese defeated a squadron of twelve Venetian galleys under Giustinian sent to bring grain from Sicily, capturing six and taking Giustinian prisoner. Venice faced starvation.

The siege of Chioggia resolved itself into two overlapping campaigns: the first a bastion-by-bastion Venetian drive through Brondolo; the second an unceasing amphibious struggle to dominate the surrounding channels and waterways. In the latter struggle the Venetians' smaller, handier boats and local knowledge gave them the upper hand. They also made good use of galley-mounted bombards, as noted by Daniele di Chinazzo. The overland drive was marked by the effective use of guns as well, notably two large bombards, the first firing 147-pound stone balls and the second, named *la Trevisana* after her founding place in Treviso, firing balls weighing no less than 205 pounds. The chronicler's account is reminiscent of First World War trench warfare, with artillery bombardments of bastions alternating with infantry assaults under cover of crossbow fire.

On 6 January, according to di Chinazzo, la Trevisana, 'returning to her

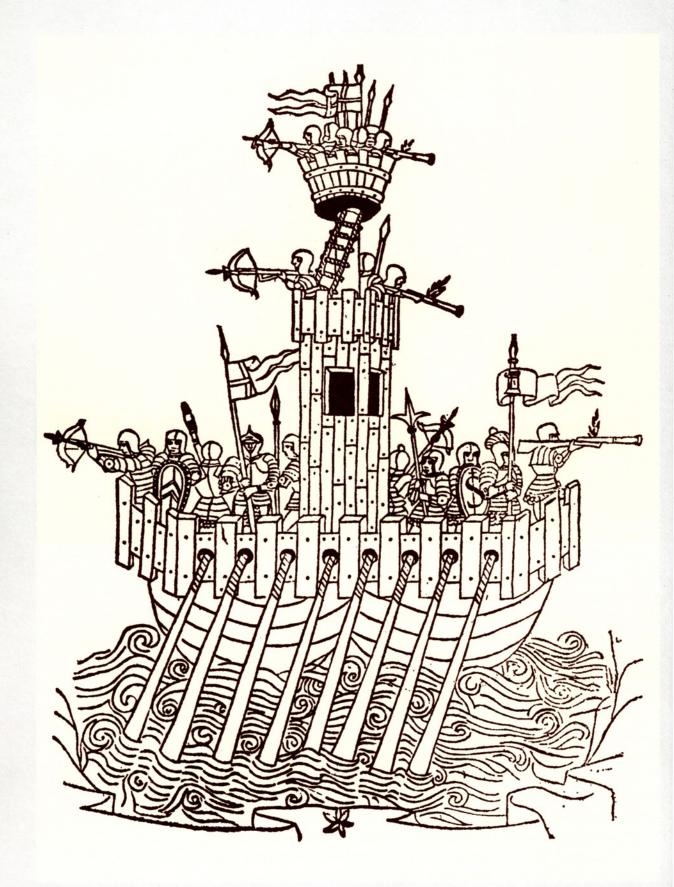


origins' – that is, firing north towards Treviso – 'fired several stones, the last of which struck the belltower of Brondolo, dislodging a large piece of masonry that killed miser Piero Doria, Captain General of the Galleys of Genoa and of the army in Brondolo.' Nor was *la Trevisana* finished: on 22 January, she collapsed another section of wall, killing twenty-two Genoese. Gunpowder ordnance had made its debut as a serious actor on the stage of history.

Doria's death was an emotional turning point, but Venice was nearly as exhausted as the Genoese garrison, and if Genoese supplies were running short, their money held good. They fought on, and Venetian mercenaries could still be tempted... and were; some were hanged for their troubles. Not until 19 June did the Genoese, down to the last ditch and last crust of bread, ask for a parley. They surrendered two days later and the Venetians entered Chioggia on 24 June, taking 4,000 Genoese prisoners and nineteen galleys.

Venice had survived; that was important. More so, Venice had learned – and demonstrated – gunpowder's potential. For this, there were precursors ashore, though none so dramatic as *la Trevisana*'s exploits. There were none afloat.

The triumphant return of Doge Andrea Contarini to Venice following the Genoese capitulation at Chioggia. The painting, by Paolo Veronese two centuries after the events depicted, gives a powerful sense of the remembered importance in Venice of the victory.



CHAPTER TWO



THE WEAPONS OF WAR AT SEA 1300–1650

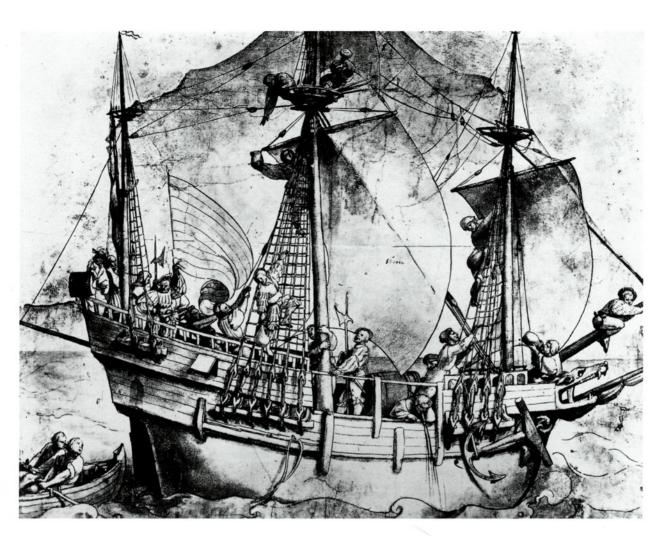
An ILLUSTRATION FROM A 1460 TREATISE on warfare, De Re Militari, by Roberto Valturio. The ship is naïvely drawn, but the arms and equipment are credibly rendered and represent a realistic cross section of the arms and equipment of the fighting complements of contemporary European warships. Crossbows were only just being challenged by firearms and the hand culverineers are firing their pieces mounted above the shoulder, implying modest recoil and destructive capabilities. In a more abstract sense, the drawing accurately conveys the notion that ship-to-ship fights closely resembled the assaults and escalades of siege warfare on land where superior height conveyed important tactical advantages.

THE WEAPONS OF WAR AT SEA

THE PRECEDING CHAPTERS addressed the basic parameters of armed conflict at sea at the beginning of the gunpowder era, using case studies to show how tactical means were applied to achieve strategic ends. We assumed throughout that those tactical means were largely technologically determined. Embracing that assumption does not diminish the importance of geographic and economic factors, for geography does much to determine which technologies are best suited to the task at hand - this is particularly evident with regard to ships - and economics establish which technologies can be deployed and in what quantities. Nor can technology be understood divorced from its social and cultural context. The reverse side of the coin is that analysis of the technologies of war at sea can tell us a great deal about how these other factors came into play. Subsequent chapters address ships; here we consider weaponry. The war galley became an effective platform for heavy artillery in the 1510s - Chioggia was an aberration while the galleon was meant to be one from the outset. These developments reflected a decline in the importance of individual weapons. Gunpowder was the main driving force for change, although not in a simple and straightforward fashion.

Boarding was the only reliable means of achieving victory in a sea fight before the advent of gunpowder and remained the preferred means for a long time thereafter. That meant close combat with edged weapons, and the weapons of preference were remarkably uniform across geographic and cultural boundaries: swords and polearms of various kinds, most commonly half-pikes, glaives and halberds. Armour conferred substantial advantages, and armoured men-at-arms comprised an important part of warships' complements. Edged weapons were generally shorter and handier than those used ashore, and armour was lighter, but the differences were not great and warships frequently transported troops with all their impedimenta. The medieval Mediterranean war galley was intended first and foremost to serve as a boarding platform, and by the fourteenth century seasoned mariners had settled on a mix of individual weapons that remained remarkably stable for the next three centuries. The same degree of specialization in warship design does not seem to have prevailed in Asian waters after the Ming emperors allowed their fleet to wither away - the Korean turtle ships were very much the exception – but the same tactical considerations applied.

Turning to individual missile weapons, apart from thrown spears and javelins, the continuity and relative uniformity noted above disappears in the face of sharp regional differences and constant change. At the turn of the fourteenth century, the crossbow was the most important missile weapon in European waters, and probably in Asian waters as well (it was, after all, a Chinese invention). This was not only because it was lethal at both short and medium range, but because it could be quickly mastered and, unlike serious military

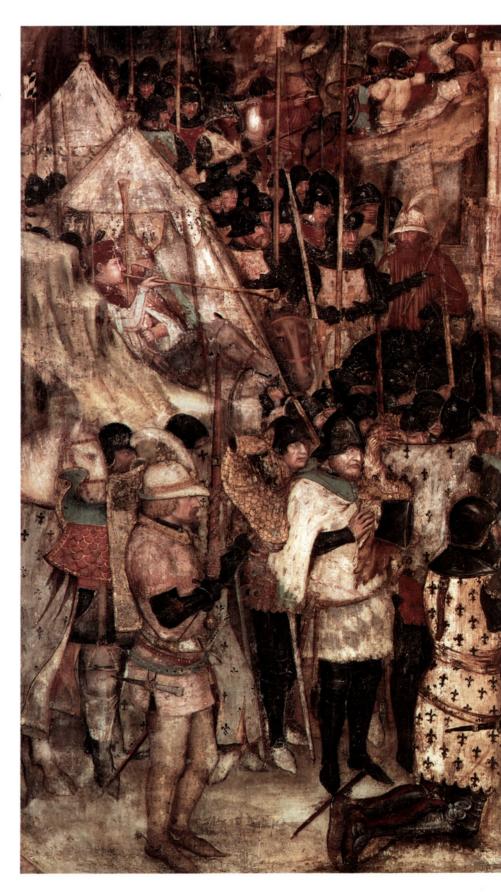


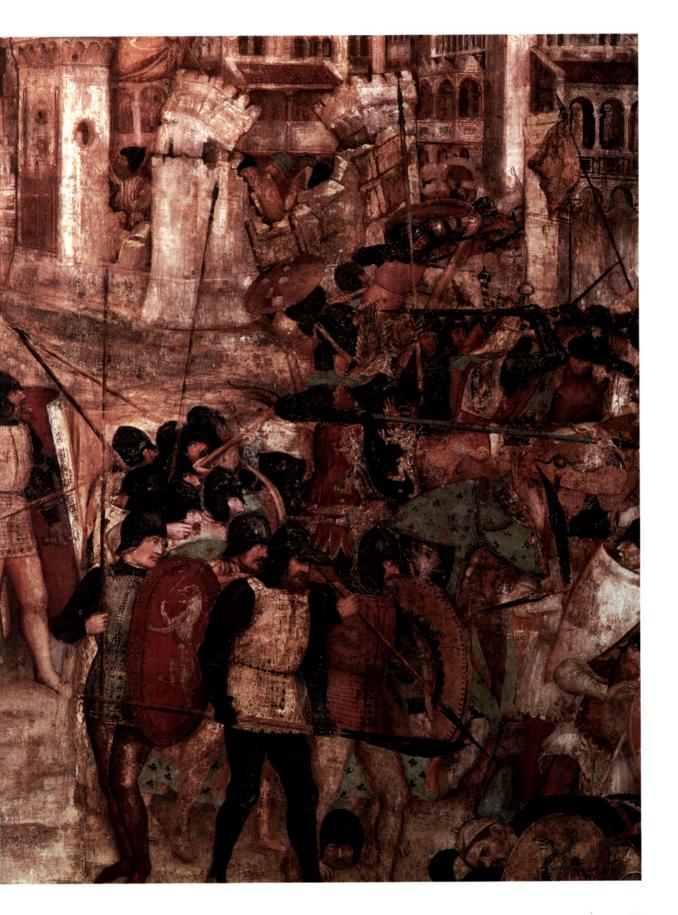
bows, did not require great physical strength. The crossbow's liabilities, inaccuracy and a slow rate of fire were mitigated by the conditions of naval combat. While crossbowmen were horribly vulnerable to charging cavalry on land, ships' bulwarks and pavisades gave them protection and time to span their bows, await opportunity and then let fly. European crossbows steadily increased in power in response to improvements in personal armour, and from about 1370 composite bows of wood and horn gave way to steel. The increased range and killing power came with a price: greater complexity and cost.

Hand-portable firearms appeared in the mid 1300s, but only began seriously to challenge the crossbow a century later with the development of efficient lock mechanisms in Germany. The next major technical advance came during the wars of Italy (1494–1559), when the Spanish developed powerful shoulder arms in response to the crossbow's inability to stop charging French men-at-arms and Swiss pikemen with any reliability. Spanish crossbows and *escopetas*, ancestors of the matchlock arquebus, co-existed at rough parity until 1500. Thereafter, the arquebus quickly displaced the crossbow in Spanish service in Europe, and was in turn partially supplanted by the musket, a heavier and more powerful firearm

By Hans Holbein the Younger, c. 1532, the above rendering reflects the enormous changes in warfare at sea since the date of the previous illustration. Though the artist has exaggerated the size of the men, the vessel - a small ship - is realistically portrayed. The fighting tops do not dominate the composition and halberds are not numerous, suggesting the growing importance of powerful deck-mounted ordnance, represented by the lidded gunport on the stern quarter. The unfortunate fellow vomiting over the rail illustrates another constant of warfare at sea.

As long as boarding and entering remained a viable tactic at sea, individual weapons were essentially indistinguishable from those on land. Those on the right are representative of European armies of the late fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries.





57

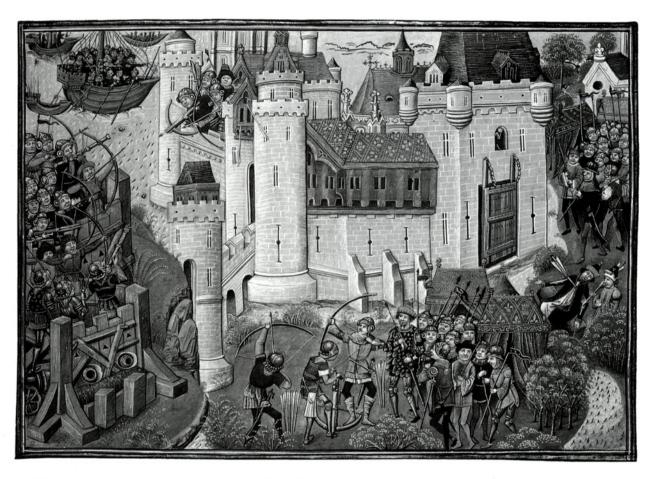
This illumination, from a 1483 Swiss chronicle, conveys the uses and capabilities of contemporary weaponry. Individual firearms are growing in importance, but still have limited power.

with considerably greater effective range, some 300 to 500 yards against massed troops as opposed to 100 to 150 yards for the arquebus and crossbow.

Demanding European tactical scenarios drove the Spanish development of individual firearms. Conquistadors used light crossbows against Amerindians to good effect long after Spanish infantry had abandoned them in Europe, and crossbows were required aboard Spanish merchant ships on the Atlantic run for



another half-century. Moreover, social and cultural factors were at work. The French were slow to adopt individual firearms, clinging to the crossbow into the 1600s. Conversely, the Ottoman Turks eagerly embraced individual firearms, overthrowing the Egyptian Mamelukes who resisted them, and the Japanese swiftly adopted the arquebus after its introduction into Japan by European traders in the 1540s.



Firearms were not, however, the premier individual missile weapon during the period of our concern. That distinction fell to the fully developed military bow, meaning, in practical terms, one drawn to the ear with a force of 100–175 pounds and capable of penetrating plate armour. Of these bows, only three survived into medieval times: the Turco-Mongol composite recurved bow, the English longbow and the Japanese samurai's bow. In skilled hands, all were far more accurate than the crossbow, arquebus or musket and all had much higher rates of fire and substantially longer effective ranges. The qualifier was 'in skilled hands', for mastery of these weapons required immense strength and a lifetime of practice. All were products of their users' lifestyles and the social fabric of their communities. The longbow disappeared during the sixteenth century not because of its shortcomings as a weapon, but because of the disappearance of the yeoman archer's way of life. Only the Ottomans, and, on a smaller scale, the Venetians,

The siege of Mortagne, 1378, from a near-contemporary illuminated manuscript. Although longbows and crossbows are the dominant individual missile weapons, cannon have supplanted trebuchets, no doubt in part because of the immense amount of high-grade timber needed to construct a large counterpoise trebuchet. The fortifications are clearly designed primarily to frustrate escalade.

were successful in promoting mastery of the composite recurved bow beyond the nomadic horse archer's tribal lifestyle.

The longbow could be devastatingly effective at sea - it wrought havoc at Sluys – but its importance declined as the pool of yeoman archers dwindled. Turkish horse archers reached the shores of the Mediterranean in the wake of the Byzantine defeat at Manzikert in 1071 and soon learned to raid by sea, but the composite bow in Muslim hands became a significant naval factor only with the consolidation of Ottoman power after the fall of Constantinople in 1453. Archers excelled at delivering a high volume of aimed fire and were effective at ranges that neither crossbow nor arquebus could match, but they needed clear space in which to stand upright, draw and release. By contrast, the arquebus and musket were handy for shooting over bulwarks and through apertures, and at short ranges arquebus balls smashed through pavisades and light planking better than arrows. Although the musket's heavy recoil and weight restricted its use to picked men, its raw stopping power was unequalled. The characteristics of archery and small arms were complementary: the Venetians used archers to cover arquebusiers while they were reloading, and fighting men aboard North African galiots carried both composite bows and muskets on occasion.

With the sole exception of Greek fire, the fabled incendiary that saved Constantinople from the Arabs in the eighth century, crew-served naval weapons were of secondary importance in Europe before the advent of gunpowder, while the secret of Greek fire was lost in the Middle Ages. It was not so in Asia, where the Sung navy used catapults to hurl incendiary munitions and bombs in the 1160s. By 1393, Ming warships were mounting four cannon with 'muzzles the size of rice bowls', that is, firing stone shot weighing about 10 pounds – large for contemporary European naval ordnance – and twenty smaller guns. At that time, the most important crew-served weapons in European waters were war galleys' projecting bows and sailing warships' grappling hooks, both weapons of shock combat. In this context, the Venetian use of shipborne ordnance during the siege of Chioggia was a remarkable divergence. That it was not immediately repeated was probably due to the powder's composition.

Gunpowder was first compounded in Europe with saltpetre consisting mainly of calcium nitrate and made according to the original Chinese recipe. Calcium nitrate is deliquescent, that is, it readily absorbs atmospheric moisture, with obvious implications for use afloat (Chinese and Venetian naval gunners must have taken extraordinary care to keep their power dry; significantly, the Venetians do not seem to have taken bombard-armed galleys outside the lagoons). In around 1400, European manufacturers of saltpetre learned to treat aqueous saltpetre with wood ash to precipitate the removal of nitrate and calcium salts, leaving non-deliquescent potassium nitrate. Guns appear routinely on ships from the 1410s, and while correlation is not causation, the timing is suggestive. These early naval guns were breech-loading bombards of wrought-iron, hoop and stave construction, designed to fire stone balls from barrels 5 to 6 calibres long, that is,

with bores five to six times as long as their internal diameters, and with powder chambers a half to a third as large around as the bore. They were quite small: if the Warwick Roll artist (see caption p. 89) drew guns and men to the same scale, the guns that he depicted fired projectiles of only 2 to 3 pounds.

Such pieces were not terribly effective, and coexisted with crossbows for a considerable time. The 1445 arms inventory of a Burgundian galley lists large, pedestal-mounted steel crossbows ahead of *veuglaires*, guns about 4 feet long firing a 3pound stone ball, suggesting that the crossbows were considered more effective. Under these circumstances, ships' bulwarks provided effective protection from missile weaponry and maximized the effectiveness of archers, crossbowmen and gunners firing downwards into a lower-lying enemy. The castles and fighting tops of cogs and carracks were important as dominant points from which to rain projectiles. Prominent among these were stones lifted to the tops with special hoists,

and gads, iron javelins with stabilizing fins. That such weapons played an important role in ship-to-ship combat at the end of the fifteenth century provides eloquent testimony to the initially modest advantages of gunpowder over muscle.

After Chioggia, the first significant use of guns in warfare at sea was not aboard ships, but in shore batteries, notably the Turks' use of huge bombards to close the Dardanelles to Venetian ships in 1453. By then, land ordnance was undergoing rapid development, marked by the appearance of massive siege bombards in Flanders, France, Germany and the Ottoman domains. At the same time, gun-founders were developing pieces of more modest size, with long barrels intended to maximize projectile velocity rather than size. Some of these, ancestors of culverins, were strong enough to shoot balls of cast iron. It was also during this period that guns cast from bronze, copper alloyed with tin in proportions of nine to one, began to establish their superiority over their wrought-iron counterparts.

The optimal materials, size, proportions and projectiles for a given task were anything but clear, and it took time to work things out. Wrought-iron ordnance required little capital investment, but demanded immense amounts of highly skilled labour, particularly for large guns. Bronze guns required considerable capital investment – copper and tin cost far more than iron, and the large refractory furnaces were expensive – but could be made larger without disproportionate increases in cost. Moreover, once the process was mastered, successful designs could be reliably replicated. Finally, bronze was corrosion-



The muzzle of a wrought iron bombard in the collection of the Museu Militar, Lisbon, showing hoop and stave construction. Forged in Goa in 1518, it fired a 200-pound stone ball. The staves were hammerwelded together around a wooden mandrel; the reinforcing hoops were then heated white hot, slid over the staves and hammerwelded into place as they contracted. Corrosion has accentuated the welding joints; they would have been barely visible when new.

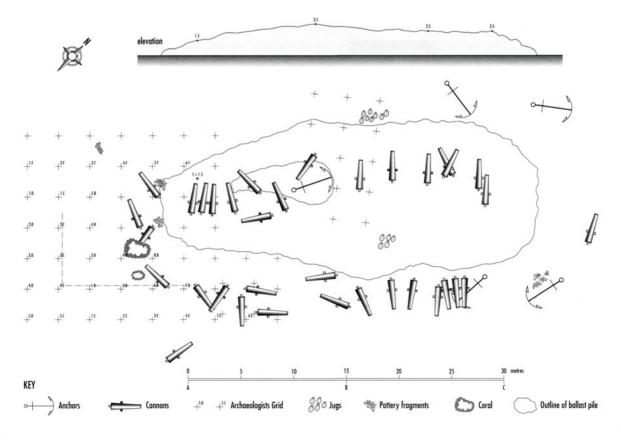
Archaeologist's site

The galleon Santíssimo Sacramento, flagship of the Portuguese Brazil Company, the Companhia Geral do Comércio do Brasil, went down off Salvador, Brazil, in 1668. She remained undisturbed until 1973 when sport divers found her and began looting the site. The Brazilian navy intervened, and in 1978 mounted an archaeological rescue operation. Forty-two of her sixty guns were accounted for, twenty-six of them bronze and all but two of the twenty-six 11-pounders or larger. These comprise a high proportion of our physical evidence of the armament of transoceanic warships in the final days of the age of the galleon.

resistant, conferring a durability that had important long-term consequences. Not only did individual guns last longer, but bronze was effectively indestructible, and damaged and worn-out guns were routinely melted down and cast into new ones. Finally, as mining added to the store of copper and tin, the amount of bronze ordnance in circulation steadily increased.

Since stone projectiles were less dense than cast iron, the same velocity could be imparted with less pressure within the gun, and lower pressures meant a greater margin of safety. The same logic relegated projectiles of lead, which were far denser than iron, to small arms. Perriers – stone-throwing guns – could be made thinner and lighter than iron-throwers for the same safety margin, offering considerable cost benefits, particularly with bronze ordnance. Finally, although stone projectiles offered significant advantages – in addition to those already noted, they made a bigger hole – their manufacture required highly skilled labour.

Logic suggested that longer barrels imparted more velocity to the ball, and while this was true only to a degree, bombards were too short to fully exploit gunpowder's propulsive properties. By the early 1500s, gun-founders and gunners had discovered the penetrative effect of long guns firing iron balls in a flat trajectory against stone walls, both challenging and complementing the smashing power of large bombards. To further complicate matters, gunners were learning the superior propulsive powers of fast-burning corned powder ... and the lethal danger of using it in older guns, particularly those of wrought iron. More



powerful guns demanded better carriages; handier and more mobile carriages multiplied the guns' effectiveness and so on, with synergistic effect.

Unsurprisingly, these developments first took place on land, for guns and powder were expensive, and with few exceptions, those who held the purse strings were landsmen, more concerned with the defence and acquisition of territory than with nautical affairs. The benchmark is the havoc wrought in Italy in 1494 by the siege train of King Charles VIII of France. The agents of destruction were bronze cannon (cannon in the technical sense, as described below), with efficient carriages drawn by horses, rather than oxen as hitherto, using corned powder to fire cast-iron balls of 30 to 50 pounds. Quoting Guicciardini, the guns

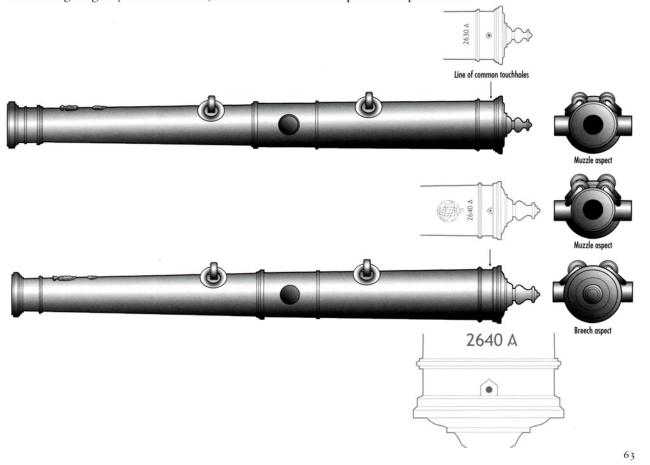
...were led right up to the walls and set in position there with incredible speed; and so little time elapsed between one shot and another and the shots were so frequent and so violent was their battering that in a few hours they could accomplish what previously in Italy used to require many days.

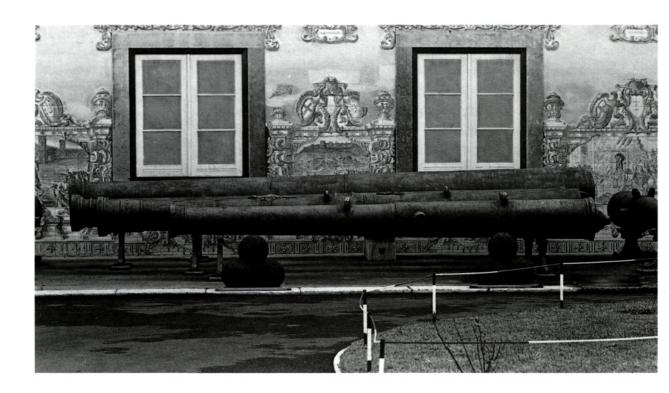
Daunting technical challenges had to be overcome before such guns could be used at sea.

By 1500, European artillery was emerging from a period of accelerated development and was being made in increasingly uniform categories. Wrought iron was giving way to cast bronze, and the bombard relinquished its place as the

BRONZE GUNS

Two archaic English bronze guns recovered from Santíssimo Sacramento, an 11-pounder, top, and an 8-pounder. While they are unsigned and undated, their proportions and archaic features, notably their great length and lifting lugs and rings, suggest that they were cast in the early 1500s; the author's best estimate is c. 1535. The weight markings are in pounds avoirdupois; the crest of the Companhia Geral do Comércio do Brasil is inscribed on the breeches. Investigation with magnets revealed iron structures embedded in the gunmetal at the breeches, trunnions and lifting rings, a previously unknown design feature.

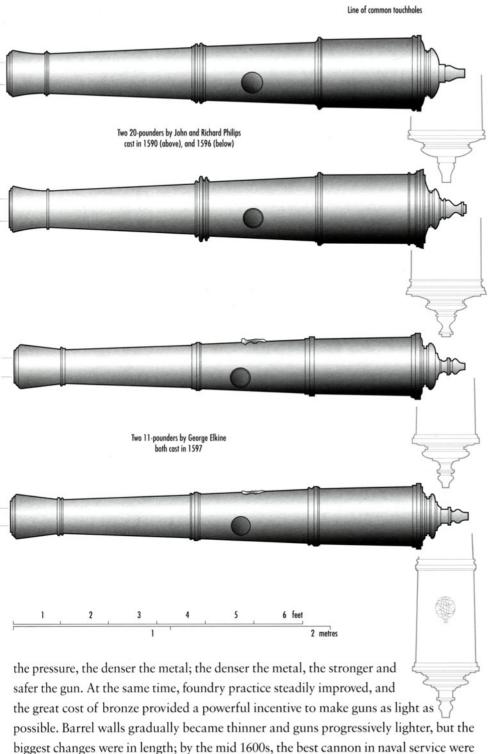




A stand of basilisks in the collection of the Museu Militar, Lisbon. At the rear is a massive 20-foot long Muslim 40-pounder; second from front is a Portuguese 42-pounder cast in 1537, probably in India. The lesser size of the Portuguese piece speaks volumes for the skill of its founders. Cast atop its barrel, on the right, is a baby basilisk, a graphic representation of the fierce mythical beast, half bird of prey and half serpent, sneering eternally at Portugal's enemies.



sine qua non of heavy ordnance, first to the basilisk – named after the mythical beast, half serpent and half bird of prey – and then to cannons and culverins. Basilisks could either be of cast bronze or, rarely, wrought iron; the common denominator was that they were big, long and powerful. Cannons and culverins were of cast bronze. In the early 1500s, cannons had barrels of 26 to 28 calibres in length and culverins, successors to the basilisks for a time as the apotheosis of destructive power, had barrels of 30 to, exceptionally, 40 calibres. The advantage of these long barrels was not, as one might suppose, greater range, but greater safety. Cannons and culverins were cast muzzle up, and the molten metal at the breech solidified under pressure. The longer the gun, the greater the pressure; the greater



A class of efficient stone-throwers, the perriers, emerged, which weighed a third to a half less than iron-throwers for the same weight of ball. These came in all sizes, ranging from 6,000-pound full-cannon equivalents down to naval swivel guns, called *medios cañones* in Spanish, weighing perhaps 600 to 900 pounds.

substantially shorter, with bores of 20 calibres or less, and culverins were obsolete.

ENGLISH DEMI-CANNONS

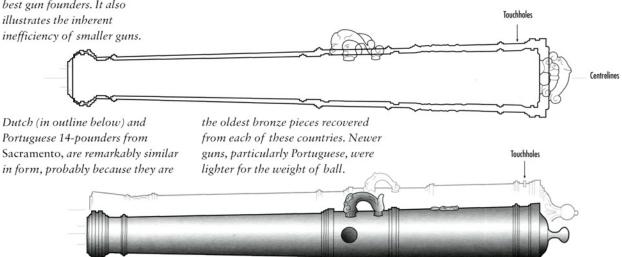
Four English demi-cannons recovered from Santíssimo Sacramento, Cast by known English founders, they were from seventy to seventyeight years old when Sacramento went down, indicating a previously unsuspected longevity for naval ordnance. Their harmonious proportions and lack of elaborate raised ornamentation are characteristic of English and Venetian - ordnance. Volume calculations reveal that their bronze was denser. and thus stronger, than that of Sacramento's other guns. Their weights in pounds avoirdupois, shown below, and in Portuguese arreteis (pounds) are stamped on the breeches. All of Sacramento's English guns bear such double markings and calculations reveal that the guns were weighed by their new owners with impressive precision.

SACRAMENTO'S GUNS

The superimposed outlines of a 28-pounder and 11-pounder from Sacramento by the same Portuguese founder, Antonio Gomes Feio, illustrates the artistic individuality and technical consistency of the best gun founders. It also illustrates the inherent inefficiency of smaller guns.

Perriers were considered particularly effective in naval service – the Portuguese *camelo* combined the best characteristics of cannon and perrier – but were progressively put out of business by stonecutters' rising wages. They had almost entirely disappeared from English gundecks by 1588, but hung on in the Ottoman domains and Portuguese India into the eighteenth century.

Our primary concern is guns with hull-smashing – and wall-smashing – capabilities, and the weight and recoil of such guns were not easily contained



Sixteenth-century bronze
Ottoman guns in the
collection of the Askeri
Musesi, Istanbul. The piece
in the centre, a 50-pound
pedrero (stone-thrower),
might well have served as
the main centre-line bow
gun on a Turkish galley at
Prevesa or Lepanto.



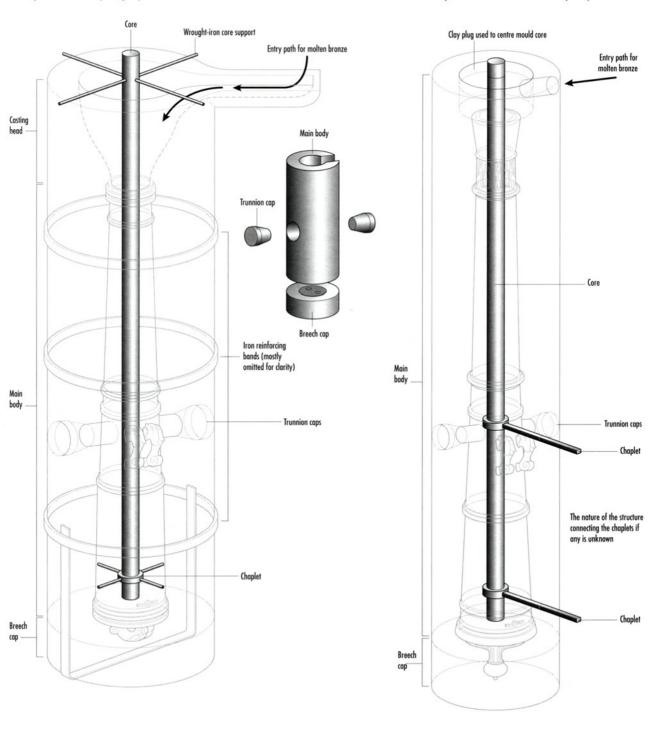
(large bombards were tried at sea, but with indifferent results, as we shall see in our discussion of the battle of Zonchio). The French had solved the problem on land by 1494. It was solved at sea by about 1510, almost certainly in Venice, as discussed in Chapter 4. The solution was to suspend a galley's main centre-line bow gun from its trunnions in a stout wooden box that was mounted on a track and allowed to slide backwards on recoil. These mounts for the first time combined the operational advantages of water transport with the tactical power of first-rate, French-style, heavy ordnance. Expensive in terms of manpower – a

Moulds used to cast Sacramento's cannon

The author's reconstruction of moulds used to cast Sacramento's Portuguese 26-pounders, left, and her Dutch 15-pounder. The moulds were made of pottery clay mixed with finely sifted

horse manure and wool fragments, built up around a wax-coated positive of the gun that was removed when the mould was dry. The moulds were then fired to melt out the wax and burn

away the wool and manure fragments, leaving a sintered surface to absorb the water vapour released when the molten bronze reacted with silicates in the clay. The moulds were sunk in pits surrounded by rammed earth for casting. The wrought iron chaplets centring the cores remained embedded in the bronze. The Dutch mould reconstruction is conjectural, based on chaplet placement.

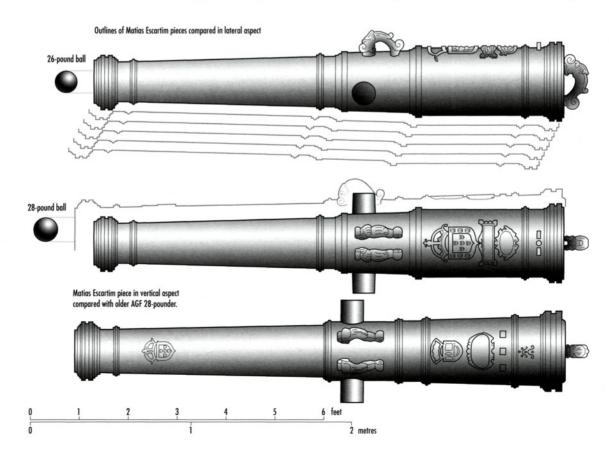


BRONZE ORDNANCE

Sacramento's best heavy bronze ordnance, six 26-pounders by the founder Matias Escartim cast in Lisbon in 1649-53, and an undated, but probably earlier, 28-pounder by the founder Antonio Gomes Feio (AGF). The Matias Escartim pieces weighed an average of 3,729 pounds and the AGF piece weighed 4,047 pounds. Sacramento also carried some sixteen cast-iron pieces, probably half of them 24-pounders and half 11-pounders based on the gross external dimensions of the eight recovered. They would have been substantially larger and heavier than bronze pieces firing the same weight of ball.

galley's entire complement of oarsmen was needed to train the gun – these were the most efficient artillery carriages of their day and Mediterranean seamen quickly grasped their advantages.

The problems of mounting heavy ordnance on sailing ships were less readily solved. The earliest carriages were wooden sledges. These effectively mated the large breech-loaders' powder chambers and barrels; adding wheels at the front made training easier and the rear could be raised and lowered to control elevation. Even so, they were still heavy and unwieldy. Such cumbersome mounts were common well into the sixteenth century - they predominated on the Mary Rose, sunk in 1545 – as were land carriages, with their large wheels and long trails. The slow development of gun carriages for sailing ships is partly attributable to the need to develop supporting technologies, notably securing tackle and the watertight gun port. The solution, although it was neither quickly nor universally adopted, was the truck carriage, a stout wooden box on four small wheels in which the gun was suspended from its trunnions, a compact arrangement well suited for use in the confined space of a gundeck. As an added benefit, the small wheels allowed the barrel to protrude well beyond the gun port, permitting wider angles of traverse and keeping the muzzle blast clear of the hull. In its final form, perfected by 1700, the truck carriage was restrained by an elaborate tackle and trained in azimuth by handspikes; elevation was adjusted with a wedge beneath the breech and the gun's recoil was used to bring it



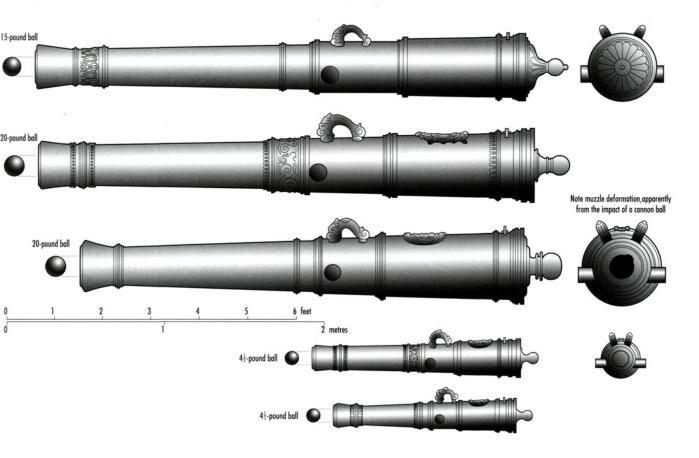
inboard for loading. When and where all these elements came together is unclear.

The earliest evidence of truck carriages is found in the 1513 survey of Henry VIII's navy, which lists four large guns aboard *Trinity*, mounted on carriages with 'trotill wheeles' and four carriages for large guns on *Henry Grace à Dieu*, with 'trotills, 'wheles' or – the clincher – 'on four wheels'. These were not the equals of their eighteenth-century successors: a truck carriage raised from the *Mary Rose*, although similar in appearance, was less solidly constructed. Still, they were vastly superior to sledges and land carriages. For all its seemingly obvious advantages, the truck carriage was slow to take hold, however, except in England. In 1588 the bulk of the Spanish Armada's guns, if not all, were mounted on sledges and land carriages.

We now turn to ballistic performance, leaving a more complete treatment of mounting arrangements to our discussions of caravel, carrack and galleon. Culverin, cannon and perrier alike were smooth-bore guns firing spherical projectiles, and as such they shared common limitations. First, the projectiles were inert (mortars firing exploding shells played a minor role on land and none at all at sea until the 1680s). Because of aerodynamic drag, destructive energy fell off sharply with range, and the angle of impact steepened, limiting penetration. Next, the ballistic properties of black powder placed an absolute limit on muzzle velocities of about 1,200 to 1,500 feet per second. Finally, cannonballs had to be appreciably smaller than the bore to preclude their getting stuck, a serious

DUTCH BRONZE GUNS

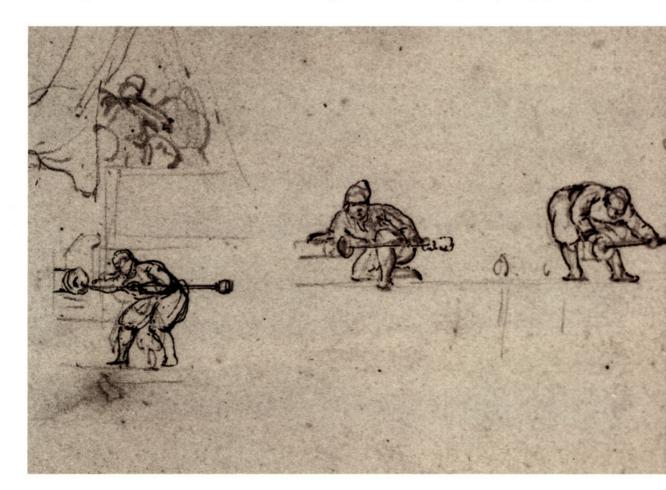
Five of the bronze guns recovered from Sacramento were captured Dutch pieces, indicative of a shortage of good ordnance in 1649-50 when she was commissioned. The three larger pieces were cast in 1622, 1634, and 1649, respectively (top to bottom). The shorter and less massive barrels of the newer pieces as a function of projectile weight is suggestive of improving foundry practice. The Dutch pieces were more elaborately decorated than. their Portuguese or English equivalents.



A sketch of gunners loading and swabbing guns from outboard by the Dutch artist Willem van de Velde, probably the Elder (1611-93). The extent to which outboard loading was used and how long the practice endured is a matter of debate among naval historians. What is clear is that using the recoil of truck-carriage mounted broadside guns to bring them inboard for loading was uncommon until well into the seventeenth century, even on English vessels.

problem as powder residue accumulated rapidly when firing. In consequence, the cannonball bounced, or balloted, from side to side as it went down the bore, departing at an unpredictable angle. Whatever spin it acquired en route was at right angles to the line of flight, resulting in a 'hook' or 'slice' like a golf ball. Not only was the spin unpredictable, but there was very little of it and the aerodynamic forces on a slowly spinning sphere are also unpredictable, causing the projectile to 'wobble' like an American baseball pitcher's knuckle ball, with obvious implications for accuracy. Although a galley's main centre-line gun could do better under ideal conditions, these factors generally limited the effective range of naval artillery to 200 to 300 yards, a figure that dropped when the gun was fired from a rolling deck. To be sure, any piece larger than a swivel gun could throw its projectile thousands of yards, but with few exceptions - 'long shots' that brought down a fleeing enemy's rigging or disabled a pursuing foe - that was irrelevant. Carriages and mounting arrangements improved steadily, though incrementally. The range, striking power and accuracy of good naval ordnance in the hands of first-rate gunners would not increase materially until the advent of rifled artillery in the 1850s.

There were nevertheless significant national differences in the quality of bronze ordnance. Writing after the battle of Lepanto (1571), Spanish gunner Luis



Collado considered German and Flemish guns best, with Venetian ordnance close behind, although Venetian guns were lighter for the weight of ball. Collado acknowledged the excellence of French ordnance; conversely, he considered Genoese guns cast for export 'the worst in Europe'. He had a high opinion of Spanish guns, particularly those cast in Malaga, though they were heavier and longer than their Venetian, French and German equivalents. He considered Ottoman guns cumbersome, though sound. Modern scholarship confirms Collado's judgements, but his experience was Mediterranean and he said nothing about Dutch or English guns. Dutch ordnance was sound, although, based on surviving examples, heavier than equivalent English or Portuguese pieces. The English came late to gun-founding, and Henry VIII imported Flemish founders early in his reign, but English founders learned quickly, and by the 1540s were casting some of the finest bronze ordnance in the world.

By the 1520s bronze muzzle-loaders were solidly established as the European naval ordnance of choice, although wrought iron continued in use, particularly aboard merchant ships. The production and use of cast-iron guns grew steadily from the 1550s, but their use aboard warships was exceptional and of necessity rather than choice. This began to change in the 1620s, when economic reality began to force the adoption of iron guns on state warships. That in turn forced

An English 91/2 pound demi-cannon cast in 1571 by Robert and John Owen, in the collection of the Museu Militar, Lisbon. This was a compact and efficient piece and underlines the high quality of the best contemporary English bronze ordnance. It is also noteworthy for its uncommon beauty and harmonious proportions: the spiralled breech has eleven facets and the muzzle has ten.





changes in warship design that culminated in the eighteenth-century ship-of-theline, a development beyond the scope of our analysis. Meanwhile, economic factors were paramount: in 1570, bronze cost £40–£60 per ton in England, 3½ to 6 times more than iron; by 1670, bronze cost £150 per ton and the ratio had increased to 8½ to one. Cast-iron naval ordnance was important over the short term because its cheapness made it widely available. It was important over the long term because its greater weight forced the changes in warship design mentioned above. The net result was to place global hegemony within the grasp of those nations that were capable of building and arming fleets of ships-of-theline and arming them with heavy, cast-iron ordnance.

Zonchio, 1499

... a forest on the sea, when described incredible but when seen stupefying.

A Venetian galley captain's description of the Turkish fleet, 1470

The fall of Constantinople to Sultan Mehmed II's bombards in 1453 shifted the strategic balance in the Mediterranean, not least by compromising Venice's hold on the Aegean and the Levant trade. More importantly over the long term, Constantinople's dockyards and arsenals, as well as the resources of Anatolia and the Balkans, gave the Ottomans a solid basis for sea power. That, however, was not immediately apparent, and Mehmed initially contented himself with absorbing the Byzantine domains and consolidating his hold over the Balkans. Venice and the Turks had a strong mutual interest in peaceful commercial relations, but inveterate Ottoman expansionism against the backdrop of Pope Pius II's calls for a general European crusade pushed them towards war. The spark was provided by Albanian border disputes and Ottoman expansion in the Morea (the Peloponnese).

Unchallenged at sea, and at the height of her naval prestige, Venice struck in June 1463 by occupying the Morea. But numbers counted on land: the Morea was lost that autumn and the Turks undertook a massive naval build-up. Worse still for Venice, Pius died the following year, and, his crusading impulse having died with him, Venice was left without allies in the Mediterranean. The war's defining moment came in 1470, when an enormous Ottoman fleet, variously reported as numbering 300 to 450 vessels, carrying seventy thousand soldiers and the imperial siege train, sortied from Constantinople to rendezvous with an army led overland by Mehmed himself. The target was the island fortress of Negroponte, key to the Aegean. Facing overwhelming odds, the Venetian covering squadron of fifty-five galleys failed to engage and withdrew to Crete. By the time it returned with reinforcements, the Turks were solidly ensconced ashore and had mounted two general assaults. Fearful of Turkish shore batteries the Venetian fleet failed to relieve the city. Ten days and two assaults later, it fell.

The war dragged on, in part because of Ottoman distractions in Persia and

Albania. Having taken Negroponte, the Ottomans abandoned the sea while Venetian squadrons raided at will and took Cyprus. Still, the loss of Negroponte was a major blow, and the disruption of trade was intolerable over the long haul. Venice sued for peace in 1479, surrendering Negroponte and several other Aegean islands and agreeing to pay a sizeable annual indemnity in return for restored trading privileges.

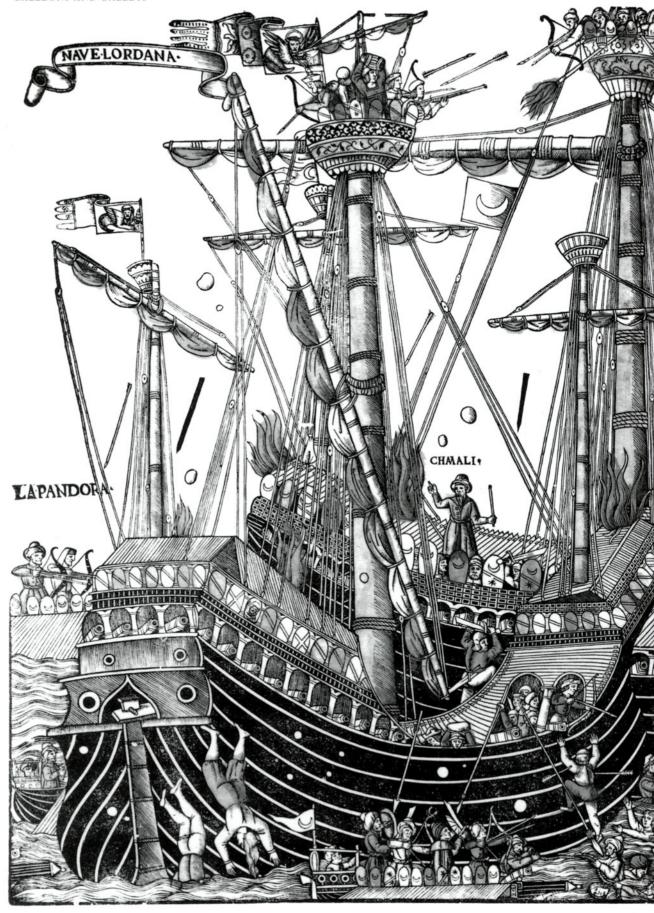
In 1480, with Venice sidelined, Mehmed attacked Rhodes, the home of the Knights of St John and a perpetual thorn in the side of Muslim commerce. The attack failed, but the next year an Ottoman army seized Otranto, at the heel of the Italian boot. Mehmed's fleet had shown that it could transport his army to Italy, and that army had no Christian equal. Until the Spanish infantry learned to combine arquebus and musket fire with pike drill during the wars of Italy, something not evident before the battle of Pavia in 1525, no Western army could handle horse archers in the open field, and armoured *sipahi* horse archers were the core of Mehmed's host. The threat to Italy – and even to Rome, Mehmed's stated objective in legend, and probably in fact – was palpable.

It evaporated when Mehmed died in 1481 and his empire descended into the throes of a hard-fought succession struggle between princes Bayezid and Cem. Otranto's garrison withdrew to support Bayezid's ultimately successful bid, but Cem – uncharacteristically for an Ottoman prince – sought refuge in enemy lands, first Mameluke Egypt and then, after a renewed bid for the throne, in Rhodes. Under Ottoman succession law, either prince's claim was equally valid, and Cem enjoyed considerable support. Bayezid was thus strategically hamstrung as long as Cem remained at large and in the hands of Bayezid's enemies, at first the Knights of St John, then the Pope and ultimately Charles VIII of France.

When Cem died in 1499 Bayezid immediately attacked Venice, going for her coastal enclaves in Greece. The climactic engagement took place on 12 August 1499 off Zonchio, on the south-western coast of the Morea. In strategic outline it mirrored the engagement off Negroponte in 1470: a Venetian attempt to prevent an Ottoman fleet from delivering a siege train and reinforcements to an imperial army besieging a fortified port. That the target was Lepanto, on Greece's western coast, is clear evidence of the Turks' growing might at sea. The ensuing clash was both instructive and decisive. On the day of battle, the Ottoman fleet under Daud Pasha numbered 277 vessels, including 60 ordinary galleys, 30 galiots and *fustas*, 3 heavy galleys, 2 large carracks and 18 large sailing ships. Uncertain of their ability to confront the Venetians, the Turks advanced cautiously, keeping close to the shore.

The Venetian fleet, under Antonio Grimani, numbered 110, including 4 carracks of 1,800 tons, 24 armed roundships of lesser size, 44 ordinary galleys and 12 heavy galleys. In an apparent breakdown of discipline, the only Venetian ships fully to engage were carracks under Andrea Loredan and Albano d'Armer, who attacked the largest Turkish carrack commanded by Burak Re'is, a noted corsair. Larger than its Venetian opponents, Burak's carrack was stuffed with

OVERLEAF: A Venetian woodcut of the battle of Zonchio, showing the climactic struggle between two Venetian carracks and a Turkish carrack under Burak Re'is (Chmali). They are depicted with an accuracy that dates the woodcut close to the event. All three carracks have guns in abundance - mostly small bombards firing over the bulwarks, though Burak's mounted a pair of huge stone-throwers - but individual missile weapons dominate the fight with a veritable rain of stones, arrows and gads cascading down from the fighting tops. Composite bows are much in evidence, particularly among the Turks. The flames that ended the fight are shown licking at all three carracks.





janissaries and armed with two broadside bombards, firing 150 to 200-pound stone balls. Based on a near-contemporary woodcut of the battle, all three carracks were plentifully supplied with light wrought-iron bombards firing over the wales. Significantly, the waists of all three carracks are shown covered with anti-boarding netting.

The big Ottoman bombards sunk a 600-ton Venetian ship and a smaller vessel outright, no doubt helping to explain the Venetian reluctance to engage. Indeed, to justify his caution, Alvise Marcello, the commander of the Venetian round ships, later emphasized the physical and moral impact of 150-pound stone cannonballs striking his ship. The big guns, however, played no further role in the fight, probably because they were mounted in rigid beds and loaded from outboard. This was an awkward procedure, and to make things worse, bombards used dry-compounded serpentine powder that had to be tightly confined by driving a wooden plug into the chamber, a suicidal task when undertaken outboard with an enemy ship alongside. Although the Turkish galleys intervened to no effect – bow-mounted swivel guns were their largest ordnance – the struggle lasted for four hours. The Venetians must have pressed Burak Re'is hard, for he turned in desperation to burning pitch and the flames spread to all three carracks, destroying them. Deterred by the horrible results, the Venetians held off thereafter, and on 25 August the Turks entered the Gulf of Corinth. Learning that the approaching fleet was Turkish and that it carried the siege train, Lepanto's garrison surrendered without a fight.

The lessons of the engagement bear consideration. Although the Turkish bombards get partial credit for having deterred the bulk of the Venetian fleet, the battle was dominated by anti-personnel missile weapons fired from the carracks' bulwarks, castles and fighting tops. Based on the woodcut, the composite recurved bow was more common among the Turks than the Venetians. Individual firearms were rare on both sides, though more common among the Venetians. Over a fifth of the individuals depicted are brandishing weapons of shock combat, and several Venetians are wearing armour, clear evidence of the perceived importance of boarding. Finally, there is an impressive rain of projectiles from the fighting tops, including gads, rocks and barrels, perhaps containing quicklime or incendiaries. Clearly, gunpowder was not dominant.

Strategically, Ottoman numbers on land, and their ability to transport heavy siege guns by sea, had neutralized Venetian skill afloat. The Turks exploited the combination the following year. Venetian attempts to impede the progress of the Ottoman fleet were again ineffective, and Modon and Coron, the main Venetian bases in the Morea, fell. Having achieved their land objectives, the Turks abandoned the sea while Venetian squadrons raided at will and consolidated their hold on the Ionian islands. France, Spain and Portugal, concerned by the spectre of an expansive Osmanli state, sent assistance, Hungary going to war with the Turks. In early 1502 the Ottomans and Venice concluded a peace treaty that restored Venice's commercial privileges, but the seeming reversion to the status

quo was illusory. Venice was still in many respects the premier Mediterranean naval power – this was certainly true in terms of warship design – but henceforth it would fight the Turks out of necessity, not choice.

THE MALABAR COAST, 1503

How it came to pass that Portugal carved out a maritime empire halfway around the world a full century before any other power attempted anything remotely similar remains one of the puzzles of history. In natural and human resources, Portugal would have seemed an unlikely candidate for a world hegemon as Europe recovered from the Viking and Arab invasions and the Black Death. Indeed, in 1385 Portugal had preserved its independence under the house of Avis by a thread, defeating, with English assistance, an attempt by King John of Castile at Aljubarrota to seize the Portuguese throne. But, having expelled the Muslims a full two centuries before the Spanish, the Portuguese turned early to overseas exploration, combining crusading impulses with the Avis kings' commercial interests. The initial draw was gold and slaves from south of the Sahara, and by the mid 1300s Portuguese mariners were exploring the African coast with royal encouragement, seeking a way to intercept the trade at its source. The Portuguese discovered the Madeiras, and probably the Azores, before 1400, and in 1415 they seized the Muslim port of Ceuta on the Moroccan coast opposite Gibraltar.

Efforts to extract wealth from the Atlantic were not uniquely Portuguese: the Spanish conquered the Canaries and Italian entrepreneurs, particularly Genoese, searched for new lands and profit. But the Avis kings sponsored development of the technologies needed for the task: ships, navigational methods and, at an early stage, guns. Moreover, they had ambitious objectives: to tap into the Mediterranean spice trade at its source by finding a direct sea route to India, and to locate and render aid to the lost Christian kingdom of Prester John.

The Avis research and development programme – for that is what it was – was systematic and effective. By the last quarter of the fifteenth century, the Portuguese had developed a coherent system of deep-sea navigation aimed at commercial profit and underwritten by armed violence. It was based on experimentally derived knowledge of solar and stellar navigation; superior nautical charts; ships that could reliably traverse the broad reaches of the Atlantic and serve as effective gun platforms; and steadily expanding geographical knowledge, not least the wind patterns and currents of the southern Atlantic.

At the core of the system, from about 1440, was the caravel. Derived from Atlantic fishing boats, caravels were relatively small, typically about 30–100 tons displacement. Exceptionally seaworthy, weatherly and of comparatively shallow draught for their displacement, caravels were ideal for exploration. Finally, the caravel's stability and low freeboard made it possible to mount a limited number of heavy guns on deck. This was important, for the Portuguese had learned the destructive effect on a ship's hull of heavy shot fired *ao lume do agua* – at the

THE BATTLE OF THE MALABAR COAST

In the first phase of the battle, the Portuguese, sailing in line with Vicente Sodre's weatherly caravels in the lead and da Gama following with his squadron of carracks, worked their way to windward of the oncoming Muslims. In the second, Sodre's broadside ordnance wreaked havoc among the relatively flimsy Muslim craft, leaving da Gama to mop up with fire from the castles and waists.

waterline – before they reached Asian waters. The biggest and best of those guns were of a uniquely Portuguese pattern: called *camelos*, they fired stone balls and had proportions quite different from other European ordnance. As we have already seen, the lower density of stone projectiles, as opposed to iron, made thin barrels feasible, and the resultant pieces were remarkably light when compared with their destructive power.

By 1434, the Portuguese had rounded Cape Bojador, on the African mainland opposite the Canaries. Within half a century, they were reaching far out into the Atlantic before turning south-east to catch the prevailing westerlies to make landfall on the African coast. In 1487, the navigator Bartolomeu Diaz turned the Cape of Good Hope and returned to report that he had found the route to India. No record survives of further expeditions prior to Vasco da Gama's departure from Lisbon in July 1497, but it seems unlikely that the Portuguese curtailed their exploration, and Arab sources report strange shipwrecks in the Madagascar

The Malabar Coast February 1503

- February 1503: da Gama moves north towards Calicut in 2 squadrons totalling some 15 ships, meets a force of 80 local vessels of varying sizes
- A local force manoeuvres to close with the first of the 2 Portuguese squadrons



- 3 The Portuguese manoeuvre into line-ahead formation, bringing their heavy guns to bear on the enemy
- The local ships, exposed to the overwhelming gunfire of the Portuguese, are unable to close and board the enemy and are eventually driven off with heavy losses, leaving the Portuguese in control of vital trade links



Channel during the ten-year interval. However that may be, da Gama proceeded without any sign of uncertainty, reaching the Cape of Good Hope after an unprecedented thirteen weeks out of sight of land. His fleet consisted of three naos, full-rigged ships, one of them a supply vessel intended to be emptied and broken up en route, and a caravel, all heavily armed. Proceeding through the Madagascar Channel, da Gama obtained an Arab pilot and, catching the southwest monsoon, arrived at Calicut on the Malabar coast in late May 1498.

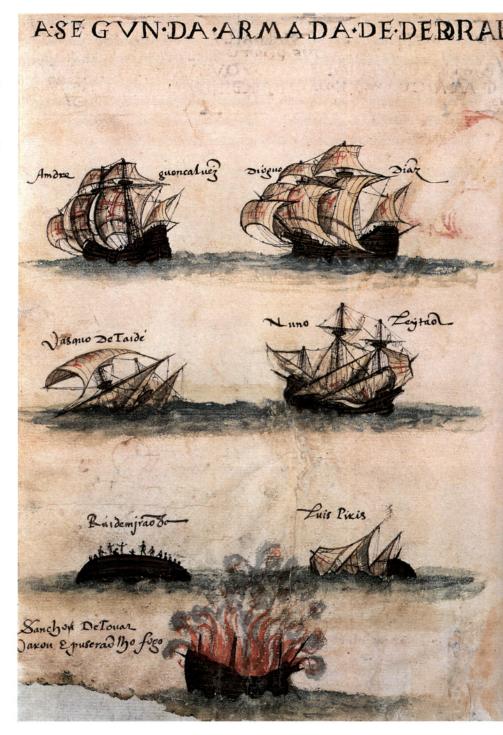
Da Gama's reception was unenthusiastic, for the Portuguese, not expecting to find a sophisticated civilization, had brought with them trade goods – cheap textiles, coral beads, hawk's bells and the like – suitable for exchange on the African coast. Calicut's Hindu ruler, the zamorin, scorned da Gama's goods and subjected his party to harassment and humiliation. That notwithstanding, the Portuguese obtained a cargo of pepper, cloves, cinnamon and other spices and set off for home, reaching Lisbon on 28 September 1499.



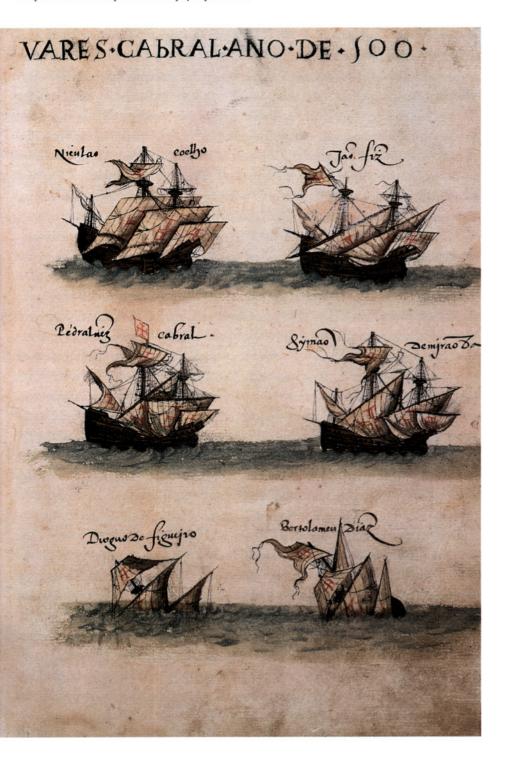


The second Portuguese expedition, comprising ten ships under Pedro Cabral, departed from Lisbon in March 1500 and reached Calicut in September. As before, the reception was ambiguous: the zamorin was willing to do business with the Portuguese and assigned them facilities ashore, but refused to expel Muslim traders as they insisted. Muslim–Christian enmity spiralled out of control and a massacre of Portuguese ensued. Cabral took his survivors aboard and bombarded

A near-contemporary depiction of the ships of Pedro Cabral's 1500 expedition to India. Note the mix of carracks, caravels and naos. Cabral encountered storms in the Atlantic and, as the picture suggests, several vessels were sunk or turned back. Only six reached India. En route, Cabral made the first recorded landing by Europeans on the Brazilian coast, claiming the land for Portugal. The sources treat this feat with an offhandedness that suggests an earlier discovery.



the port in retaliation, wreaking havoc before sailing to Cochin and Cannanore – nominally the zamorin's vassals but rivals eager to ally with the Portuguese – to top off his cargo. He reached Lisbon in the summer of 1501, with a cargo of spices that had been purchased cheaply so as to ensure enormous profits, all the more so as news of the Portuguese bombardment of the principal Indian spice emporium drove prices sharply upwards.



The third Portuguese expedition sailed in March 1502, under da Gama. Consisting of six carracks, four naos and five caravels, to be followed by an additional five small ships in May, it differed from its predecessors in that it was organized and equipped to establish a permanent presence in Asian waters. Reaching India by autumn, da Gama established a blockade of Calicut, basing his forces on ports hostile to the zamorin, or at least susceptible to Portuguese pressure. Brutally enforced, the blockade extended to the transport of Turks and pepper, striking not only at Calicut, but at the Egyptian Mameluke sultanate's tax base. During the winter, the zamorin and Muslim merchants mustered their forces and prepared to confront da Gama with two squadrons, one of sixty prahus and small craft assembled locally and the other of twenty Red Sea dhows, under a commander seconded by the Mamelukes. They planned to descend on the Portuguese in port while they were loading spices for the return trip, but da Gama was tipped off by local agents and avoided the trap. Still, the odds weighed heavily against the Portuguese. The zamorin boasted of a twenty to one advantage in ships, and spies advised da Gama that he was outnumbered ten to one.

They met off Calicut in February 1503, the Portuguese standing northwards on an offshore breeze in two squadrons, five caravels and two or three of the smaller, and more weatherly, naos under da Gama's principal subordinate, Vicente Sodre, in the lead, followed by the carracks and the remaining naos under da Gama. According to the chronicler Gaspar Correia, da Gama ordered 'the caravels to come one astern of the other in a line ... firing their guns as much as they could, and he did the same with the carracks to their rear.' His clear intent was to fight a stand-off artillery action. The caravels, with crews of only thirty, carried 'four heavy guns below, and six falcons above (two of them firing astern), and ten breech-loaders placed on the quarter deck and in the bows'. The carracks carried 'six guns on each side below, with two smaller ones at the poop and the prow and eight falcons and many smaller breech-loaders on deck, with two smaller guns that fired forward'. The guns carried 'below' were probably camelos or cameletes firing stone shot of 12 to 18 pounds; the falcons were large swivel guns firing stone balls of about 4 pounds or, more likely, scatter shot; the breechloaders were berços, swivel guns with a bore of about 2 inches firing scatter shot.

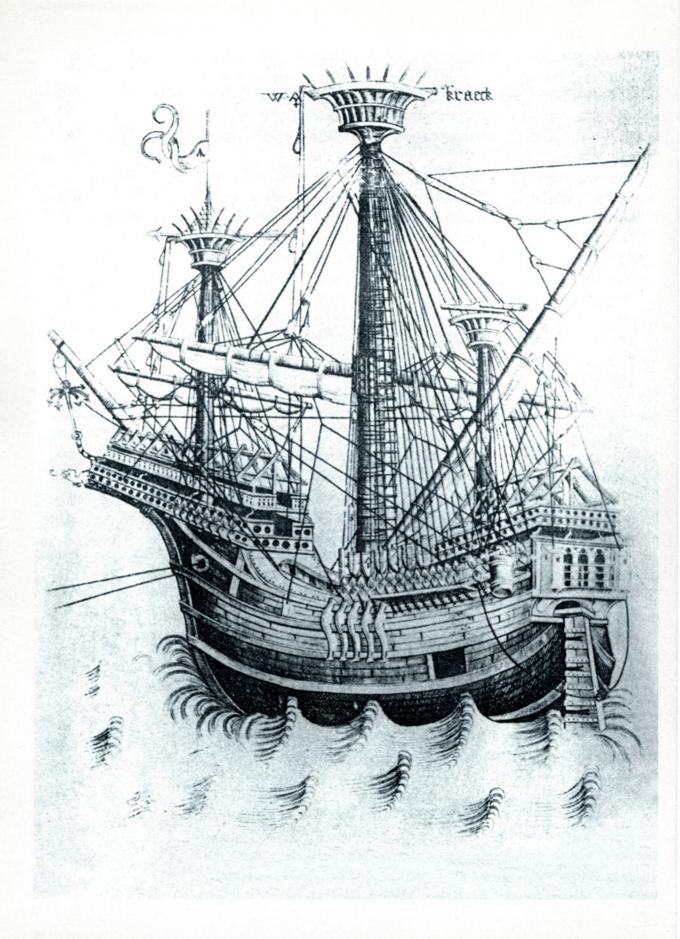
The Muslims closed from the north, the Red Sea dhows in the lead and local craft behind forming two heterogeneous squadrons, strung out and ill-ordered. Working shorewards to gain the weather gauge, Sodre's squadron engaged the dhows, using his broadside ordnance to good effect: the first volleys left the Egyptian admiral's vessel dismasted and sinking. Handily avoiding Muslim attempts to close and board, Sodre's caravels left shattered hulls in their wake. As da Gama's squadron took care of the surviving dhows, Sodre engaged the local craft, sailing straight through the mass, wreaking havoc with heavy ordnance and swivel guns. Muslim gunfire and archery was intense, but, apart from swivel gunners who sustained the bulk of the casualties, the Portuguese were safe behind

their ship's solid bulwarks. In a matter of hours it was over, with the surviving Muslims fleeing for the safety of land.

The Atlantic and Indo-Arab spheres of warfare at sea merged, with enormous consequences. Henceforth, merchants who sailed the Indian Ocean without *cartazes*, licences purchased from the Portuguese, did so at risk to life, limb and property. The cost of spices in Europe escalated, to the benefit of the Portuguese crown and the Flemish port of Antwerp, where the Portuguese marketed their goods. Traditional brokers found ways to circumvent Portuguese authority, however, and the Levant trade largely recovered within a decade. But in the interim the Mameluke sultanate had lost much of its revenue, creating a power vacuum that the Ottoman sultans would fill. Challenges to Portuguese control of the Indian Ocean would henceforth come from without.

The first of these, a Mediterranean galley fleet formed in the Red Sea, was mounted under the aegis of the Mameluke sultanate, bankrolled in part by Italian commercial interests and commanded, and largely manned, by expert artillerists and mariners seconded by the Ottomans. With the sultan of Gujarat's aid, it defeated a Portuguese squadron at Chaul, on India's western coast, in 1508 and at heavy cost, only to be annihilated by a Portuguese counterstroke at Diu the next year. It was the furthest eastward penetration of a Mediterranean empire. The Portuguese in their turn consolidated under Affonso d'Albuquerque, governor general of the Estado da India, Portugal's Indian possessions (1509–15) and the architect of Portugal's empire, seizing Goa, on India's western coast, as a permanent base in 1510, and in 1511 taking Malacca, the principal emporium linking the Indo-Arab and Chinese commercial spheres. Probing eastwards, the Portuguese unsuccessfully tested Ming China during the 1520s - that they would even try, given the staggering disparity in resources, is breathtaking – and in 1535 established a factory (and bridgehead for Jesuit missionaries) in Vietnam. They found the kingdom of Prester John - in fact, Ethiopia - and in the late 1540s saved it from defeat at the hands of an expanding Ottoman-surrogate Somali Muslim kingdom. By the late 1550s, exploiting Ming China's corrupt administrative underbelly, the Portuguese had secured the approval of local officials to establish a trading station at Macao in order to tap into the Japanese trade with China, otherwise forbidden by Ming decree.

The Portuguese were not universally successful. Their attempt to take the port of Aden, at the head of the Red Sea, failed in 1513, although by way of compensation Albuquerque took by coup the island of Ormuz, at the head of the Persian Gulf, in 1515. In 1517 an audacious attempt to capture Jiddah, gateway to the holy city of Mecca, was repulsed by a Mameluke force under a seconded Ottoman commander. The sultans of Aceh, with Ottoman technical assistance, established themselves as a local sea power and, in combination with Gujarati merchants sailing stout junks, largely restored the traditional spice trade. Nevertheless, by the 1520s the Portuguese were solidly ensconced in the Indian Ocean as a transoceanic empire, the first of its kind.



CHAPTER THREE



CARAVELS AND CARRACKS

Woodcut of a carrack by Willem A. Cruce, drawn in preparation for the 1468 wedding celebrations of Charles the Bold of Burgundy and Mary of York. At one of the wedding banquets large models of carracks, symbolizing the Duke's power, graced the serving platters of roast meat and the woodcut was used to guide the model-builders. Accurate and informative, it is the earliest depiction of a carrack – kraeck in Flemish – explicitly identified as such. Gunpowder was clearly expected to play a subsidiary role in combat. The vessel's offensive punch was the overhanging forecastle, a point underlined by the grappling hook beneath the bowsprit. The circular holes in the fore and stern castle rails were no doubt loopholes for crossbowmen and handgunners.

CARAVELS AND CARRACKS

Scale model of the so-called Bremen cog in the Deutsches Shiffahrtsmuseum. Bremerhaven, based on the hull of an early fourteenthcentury cog recovered almost intact from the Weser River in 1962. A high proportion of our knowledge of the design and construction of cogs derives from study of the recovered hull. The Bremen cog also formed the basis for a full-sized reconstruction that proved to have surprisingly good sailing qualities, though the vessel was wet in all but the gentlest seas.

THE EVOLUTION OF European sailing vessels capable of projecting power overseas was anything but straightforward, nor is the process completely understood today. The designs ancestral to the ships-of-the-line, frigates and specialized bulk carriers of the eighteenth century established their lineages not because they were necessarily superior to their competitors on the high seas, but because they were well suited for conditions in their home waters, and because those who operated them had incentives and resources to modify their designs and construction progressively in order to operate further from home. This was certainly true of the cog, the most important sailing warship in northern European waters at the dawn of the gunpowder era.

The cog's origins lay in Anglo-Saxon designs that were no more seaworthy or efficient than their contemporary Viking ships. But as trade expanded, the cog's owners and operators modified it, refining the efficiency of its rig, making it larger to increase cargo capacity, replacing the steering oar with a pintle-and-gudgeon rudder, thus making further increases in size feasible, and so on. Throughout all of this, the cog retained its single mast and square sail, keel, flat bottom, with flush-joined planking, straight stem and sternposts and clinker upper planking. So successful was the cog that certain features of its design,

particularly the sternpost rudder and square sail, were widely adopted in the Mediterranean for use in conditions quite different from those in which it had evolved. Ultimately, certain design features, notably the single mast and square sail that limited its size and handiness, rendered the cog obsolete and it gave way first to the hulk and then to the full-rigged ship. Similarly, the cog's flat bottom, which was useful for loading and unloading in small ports with extreme tides, became irrelevant for large vessels, as trade swelled in volume and as an increasing proportion passed through major

ports with wharves and proper loading facilities. Over the long haul, then,

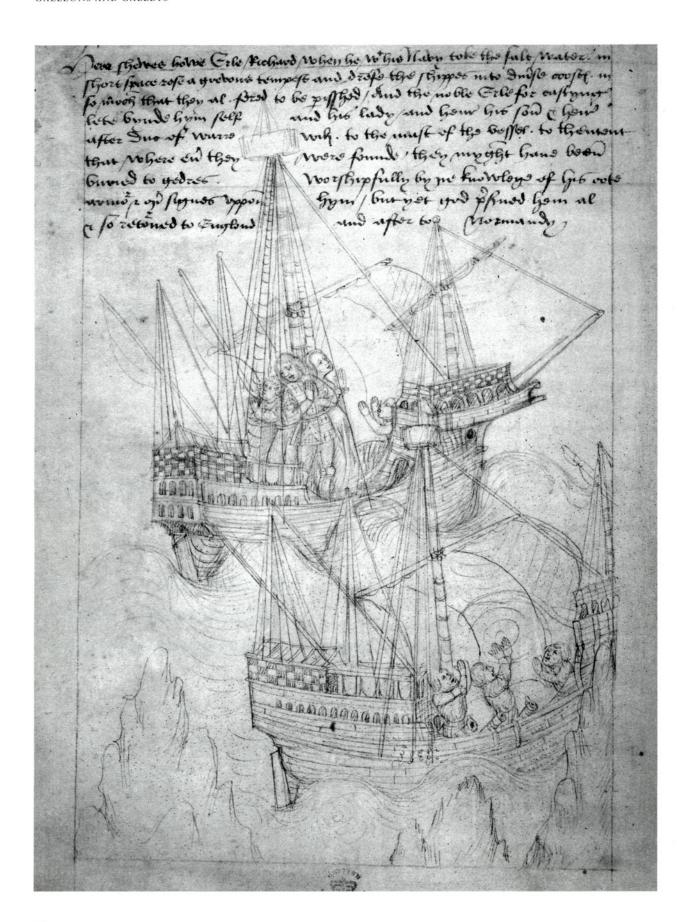
it was not just the inherent qualities of a type of ship that counted, but also who operated it, why, and with what resources. Of this there is no better example than the caravel.

The caravel began as an Atlantic fishing boat, incorporating a mixture of Atlantic and Mediterranean design features. When it becomes identifiable as a distinct type in

the fourteenth century, the smallest was an open boat with a single mast. The defining characteristics were a flush-planked hull built skeleton first - that is, carvel-built - a sternpost rudder, lateen rig and, above all, a reputation for seaworthiness and weatherliness. Caravels' hulls had a length-to-breadth ratio of nearly five to one (by comparison, that of cogs was just over two to one). At this point, the caravel was one type of deep-sea ship among many, and it is unlikely that it would have supplanted the ancestors of the nao (about which more below) had not Portugal's kings embarked on an aggressive campaign of exploration along the African coast. The caravel proved ideal for this, and by the 1440s was the preferred vessel. The caravels that found their way to India probably displaced from 80 to 130 tons; most had three masts, the largest had four. Although lateen sails were awkward for frequent tacking - to come about, the sail had to be furled and the foot of the boom brought around the front of the mast - they were more weatherly than contemporary square sails and ideal for the long reaches out into the Atlantic that were needed to reach the Cape of Good Hope. Eventually a mixed rig, with the foremast square-rigged and the rest lateen, proved best. In Columbus' day caravels were superior to naos in terms of their seaworthiness and weatherliness, but could not be made as large without sacrificing their sailing characteristics. In addition, caravels lacked cargo capacity, and for extended voyages the Portuguese routinely supported caravels with supply ships, naos, that were abandoned when their stores were depleted.

The Portuguese also used caravels as warships from the 1450s to defend the Guinea trade from Castilian and French interlopers. The caravel's weatherliness and superior speed in moderate conditions provided an effective defence against boarding - a point of vulnerability because of the caravel's low freeboard - but guns were needed to make the caravel an effective warship. The caravel's stability and low freeboard enabled the Portuguese to mount heavy ordnance on her main deck, firing over the bulwarks or through apertures within them. The caravel's small size dictated that these pieces would be few in number – perhaps only one – mounted amidships to fire broadside; there was no other option. Furthermore, their weight topside posed stability problems, even in moderate seas; the guns were therefore stowed below and hoisted up only when battle was imminent. The four lifting lugs atop Portuguese camelos and cameletes – and lifting lugs they surely were, although they may also have served other purposes - are clear, if indirect evidence, of this. When the Portuguese began using heavily gunned caravels we cannot say, but the matter-of-fact competence with which they were used in early encounters in the Indian Ocean suggests that it was well before they turned the Cape of Good Hope.

The caravel represented only a partial and specialized solution to the problem of combining heavy ordnance with ocean-going sailing capabilities. Confronted by a carrack or large nao, a caravel could avoid combat because of its superior weatherliness and, under ideal conditions, bombard from afar; but it could not close in for the kill without being overwhelmed from above by anti-personnel



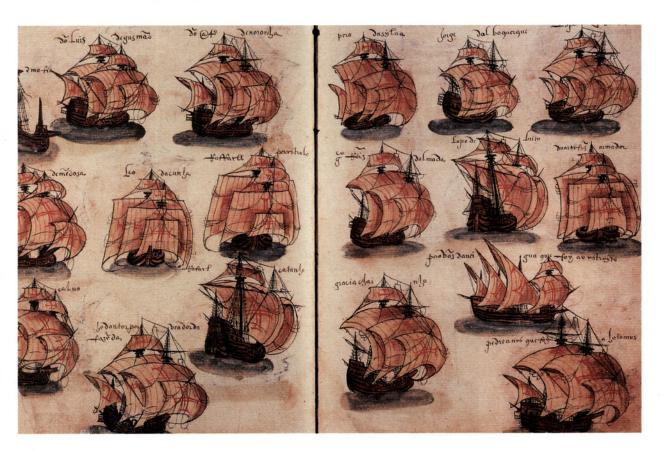
weapons. The problem was exacerbated in the early 1500s when carracks began carrying heavy ordnance low in the hull. Caravels retained their utility throughout the sixteenth century, but were never first-line warships in European waters.

Meanwhile, the design of naos – precursors to the full-rigged ship, more stoutly built than caravels and with beamier and more capacious hulls – progressively improved. They were better cargo-carriers from the outset and, as they became more seaworthy and weatherly, the caravel's advantages dwindled. At the turn of the sixteenth century, caravels still enjoyed significant advantages in terms of their speed and weatherliness – the contrast in performance between Columbus' lubberly *Santa Maria*, a nao, and the caravel *Niña* is an apt illustration – but the caravel had reached an evolutionary dead end. The future lay with the ship, of which, for a considerable time, the carrack was the most important type built for war.

The full-rigged ship emerged from a fusion of Atlantic and Mediterranean technologies that began during the thirteenth century and accelerated rapidly from about 1300. At that time, deep-sea Atlantic vessels had a single mast, a single square sail and, if they were of any significant size, a sternpost pintle-and-gudgeon rudder. With the exception of the cog's flush-planked bottom, they were built shell first of lapstrake construction. Mediterranean sailing vessels were built skeleton first with flush planking nailed to the frames, were lateen-rigged and had

Two carracks from an illustration in the so-called Warwick Roll (c. 1480), detailing the activities of the Earl of Warwick. The exaggerated size of the human figures notwithstanding, the carracks are clearly large, as indicated by their double mizzen masts. Note the bombards protruding over the midship rail of the closer one.

The outbound 1519
Portuguese India fleet, from a book published half a century afterwards. Despite the time lapse, the ship depictions are credible. Most are carracks, though the vessel with the triple lateen mizzen is clearly a caravel.



quarter rudders. Vessels of any significant size had two masts and acquired a third from about 1400. The ensuing process of borrowing and adaptation was complex, and the precise sequence debatable, but the outlines are clear: Mediterranean shipwrights borrowed first sternpost rudder and then square rig; Atlantic shipwrights adopted multiple masts and began setting a lateen sail on the rearmost to aid in trimming the ship.

The next crucial step was the adoption of skeleton-first, carvel construction by Atlantic shipwrights. The reasons for the shift are unclear; skeleton-first construction was less dependent upon traditional skills and probably cheaper, although how important those factors were we cannot say. More importantly over the long term, shell-first hulls were built by eye, whereas skeleton-first construction required systematic planning. Frames had to be lofted and the shape of the hull determined before the planking was applied, rewarding those who planned best and bringing better designs to the fore more rapidly. That began happening in Europe with increasing frequency; it did not elsewhere, however – a



matter of no small importance. Finally, carvel construction was more adaptable to the strengthening needed to accommodate the weight and recoil of heavy guns.

By the 1450s, the process outlined above had produced the nao, a carvel-built vessel with a pintle-and-gudgeon rudder, three masts and a bowsprit. The hull had a length three to five times the breadth, with permanent fighting structures at bow and stern. The fore- and mainmasts were square-rigged and the mizzenmast lateen-rigged, while a square spritsail was hung beneath the bowsprit. By the century's end, topmasts were being fitted to carry square topsails, further increasing the power of the rig. The result was the full-rigged ship, or simply ship. Hulls became progressively more seaworthy and efficient, and by the mid 1500s well-designed ships could perform as well as caravels. They did not, however, dominate in battle; that distinction fell to the carrack.

Carrack has a fairly specific meaning in English and other northern European languages, but this is not true elsewhere, and terminology can be misleading. The idea behind the carrack was nevertheless clear: to gain tactical advantage from



A large Portuguese carrack, almost surely the Santa Catarina do Monte Sinai, about 1520, shown with a twenty-four-bank ordinary galley alla sensile, right foreground, in a painting attributed to Joachim Patinir (1485-1524). All three carracks in the centre appear to be different views of the same ship. Square main- and foresails were not lowered for furling, as shown here, until much later. The mainsail has two laced-on bonnets to extend its area.

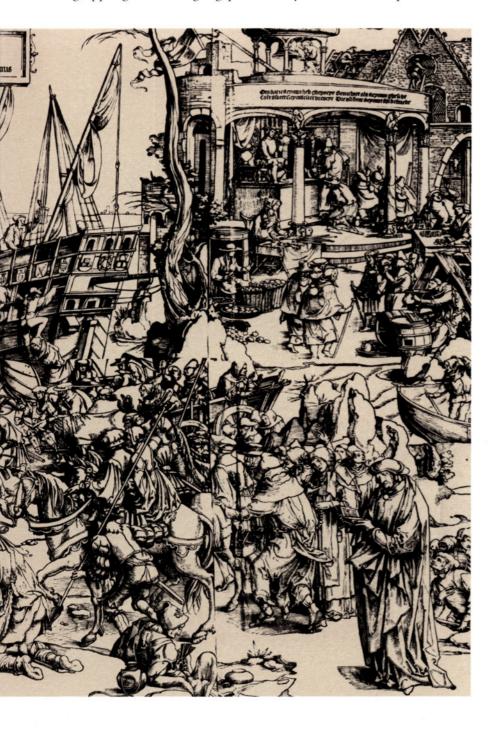
size and height, particularly by means of the high, projecting forecastle and large fighting tops that were the carrack's distinguishing features. Carracks might be clinker-built, carvel-built or a combination of both. Nor was the carrack defined by sail plan and rigging: some early carracks had two masts, or even one. It became an important type only after its hull and fighting superstructures were combined with the ship's sail plan.

The carrack emerged from a dual need: to secure cargoes from piratical attack and to project armed might afloat. Assuming a seaworthy and reasonably

An anonymous 1520 Flemish woodcut showing the provisioning of a carrack. The crew are embarking in disorder, no doubt under the influence of alcohol; the hoisted stein in the hand of the sailor on the quarterdeck is indicative! The artist's depiction of individual weapons is exemplary, making the absence of firearms all the more noteworthy. The absence of lidded gunports is noteworthy as well.



weatherly vessel, which the ship-rigged carrack was, sheer size and height served both purposes, and by the first decades of the fifteenth century it had acquired its characteristic form. This is shown in the engraving of a *kraeck* by the Dutch master WA (Willem Cruce) and the Warwick Roll illustrations. Depicting carracks of about 1476 and 1480 respectively, these sources provide telling details. Forecastles are considerably higher than stern castles, indicating the preferred tactics: to come alongside the enemy vessel bow first, grapple to hold the enemy fast – the grappling hook dangling prominently from the bowsprit of WA's



carrack makes the point – dominate the enemy's waist with missile fire, board and capture. As we saw in our discussion of Zonchio, gunpowder ordnance did little to change this tactical prescription at first, and the small bombards that were initially the carrack's main gunpowder weapons were primarily defensive. This is clear on WA's carrack: the stern gallery and mizzen crow's-nest are armed with guns, whereas the waist and forecastle have none. Moreover, the main- and foremast crow's-nests have hoists for stones and are liberally festooned with gads.

Carracks were the first sailing ships to mount heavy guns low in the hull



behind watertight gunports, although when and where is unclear. A strong, albeit undocumented, tradition attributes the invention of the watertight gunport to a French shipwright in around 1500, and there may be a grain of truth in this: the large French ship *La Cordelière*, built during the 1490s, was armed with sixteen large guns on the lower deck, and it is difficult to see how else they could have been mounted. Be this as it may, the first really effective heavy guns aboard sailing ships were a defensive response to the galley: basilisks firing through ports on either side of the carrack's rudder in what would become known as the gunroom.



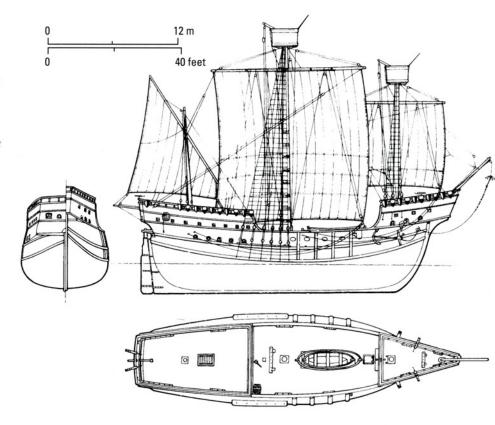
The famous Mary Rose depicted on the Anthony Anthony Roll of 1545. Built in 1509, Mary Rose's original displacement was about 1,050 tons. Here she is shown after rebuilding in 1536. Anthony recorded her armament as including two cannon, two demi-cannon, two culverins, two sakers and one falcon, all bronze, and a considerable number of wrought iron pieces, notably twelve port-pieces, large breech-loaders intended for use afloat. Sunk by misadventure off Portsmouth on 19 July 1545, most of her hull was recovered by nautical archaeology in the 1970s and is now on display in Portsmouth. By the time of her sinking, her forecastle had been considerably reduced in height.

To modern sensibilities, a rearward-firing mount seems a peculiar location for one's heaviest ordnance, but there were good reasons for the choice. Given the carrack's underwater lines, the stern was the only place to mount really heavy ordnance, and the carrack's flat counter was a logical place to experiment with watertight ports. Finally, when conditions were calm enough for galleys to stalk carracks they were also sufficiently calm for the carrack's crew to put out boats and kedges to slew the ship into position to return fire.

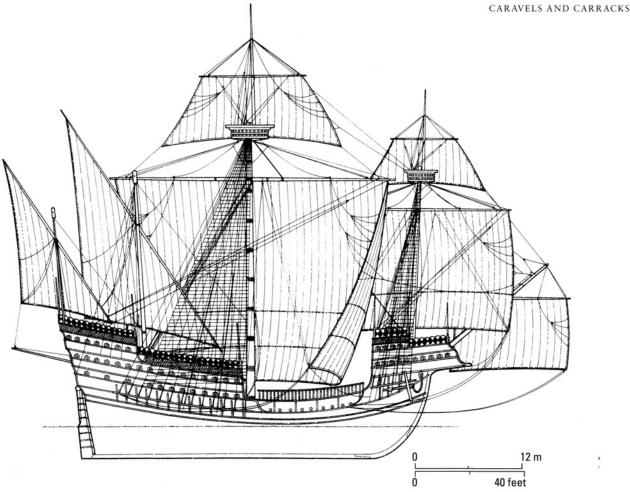
When and where this first happened is unknown, but the first strategically meaningful use of heavy guns on sailing ships was by King James IV of Scotland against land targets. The evidence is by inference, but clear: we know that James's carracks mounted heavy ordnance, and in asserting royal authority over Scotland's Western Isles, his forces reduced by gunfire in 1504 the island fortress of Cairn-na-Burgh, over a mile from the nearest landfall. Atlantic shipwrights soon learned to cut watertight ports in carracks' curving sides and, by the 1520s, heavy broadside ordnance was common. That does not mean that the 'broadside sailing ship' had been discovered, however. To the contrary: ideas about how best to mount and use heavy ordnance aboard sailing ships were in flux, with the apparent goal to maximize the weight of fire directed forwards, no doubt to match the galley's main, centre-line gun. The carrack's hull form put this goal effectively beyond reach, but did not discourage attempts to attain it. When *Mary Rose* went down in 1545, she mounted a bronze, 9-pound demi-culverin on a truck carriage – presumably one of a pair, and one of the best and most modern

A medium sized Iberian Carrack c. 1500

This carrack is ship-rigged, that is, it carries square sails set on the fore- and main masts and a lateen sail on the mizzen. Columbus's Santa Maria was not all that different from the ship depicted here, though some 10 feet shorter at the waterline and only lightly armed. Like Santa Maria, the vessel shown was probably called a nao, reflecting a general lack of consistency and precision in terminology.







guns on board - atop the forward end of the stern castle, firing obliquely forwards past the forecastle.

For all the guns aboard the carrack from the 1510s, size and height were still its chief tactical virtues, more so as carracks were efficient bulk carriers. This was particularly true in Eastern waters, where the main threat was boarders from smaller craft. In European waters the cannon-armed war galley was the problem, and galleys rarely ventured on to the high seas beyond the English Channel and the Mediterranean. The Portuguese appreciated these factors, and caravels soon gave way to ever-large carracks on the Carreira das Indias, the annual spice convoy.

To recapitulate, the heavily armed caravel was an expedient that perfectly suited Portugal's initial thrust into the Indian Ocean, but declined in utility once the Portuguese had suppressed local opposition afloat. The caravel did not spawn the long-term solution to the problem of mounting heavy guns on sailing warships, nor did its use by the Portuguese stimulate the further development of broadside tactics. Carracks could carry impressive numbers of heavy guns low in the hull, but those guns were mainly for defence. The carrack's underwater lines, and the bulk and weight of the forecastle, effectively ruled out heavy bowchasers, and its high freeboard and towering castles made it a poor sailor windward. Carracks retained their utility well into the seventeenth century, but the carrack, like the caravel, was doomed to reach an evolutionary dead end.

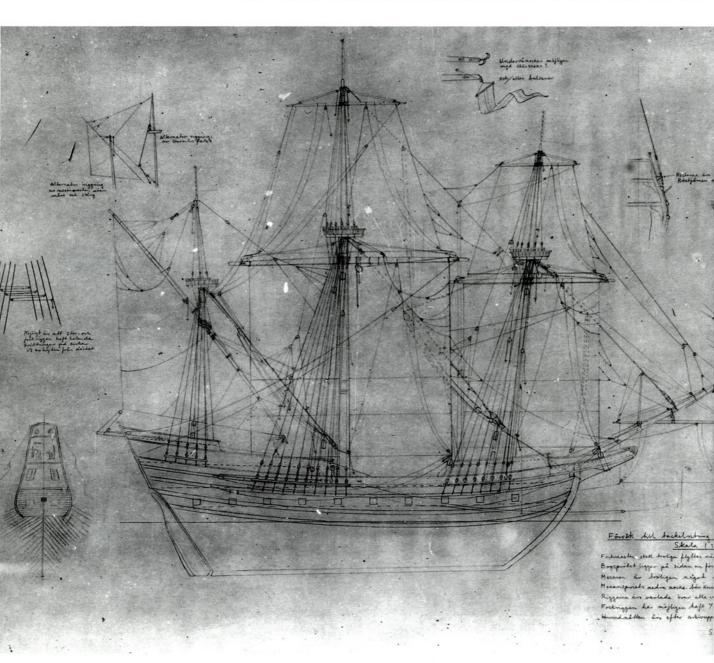
SANTA CATARINA DO MONTE SINAI

A modern drawing of Santa Catarina do Monte Sinai in about 1520. For all her size - she was one of the largest warships of her day - she carried no heavy ordnance below decks; most of her 140 guns were relatively light railing pieces or swivel guns.

The rise of Swedish sea power, 1535-70

Although the details are unclear, heavy shipboard guns appeared in the Baltic towards the beginning of the sixteenth century, paralleling contemporary developments in the Atlantic. Their strategic impact, however, was quite different, reflecting the geographic, economic and political peculiarities of the region.

In the Baltic, as in the Mediterranean, warfare at sea in the Middle Ages was fought primarily over trade and was dominated by mercantile city states. There the similarities end. Unlike their Italian equivalents, the German port cities of the Baltic made a common cause, banding together in a trade cartel called the



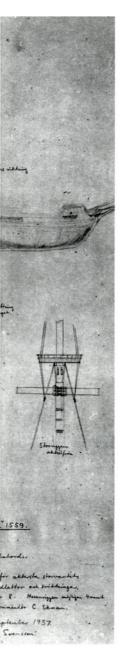
Hanseatic League (Hanse). Their foremost city was Lübeck, whose wealth and importance derived from its location at the base of the Jutland peninsula, connecting the Baltic and Atlantic through Hamburg. Most trade was in bulk commodities – grain, fish, timber, salt and naval stores – and the Hanseatic cities lacked the power to control extensive territories. The Hanseatic towns were important centres of seafaring and shipbuilding and possessed the financial wherewithal to turn their trading fleets into war fleets by hiring mercenaries and later by manufacturing and purchasing guns. The Hanse's use of trade as a weapon was effective, but brought it into conflict with the emerging monarchies of the region, notably Denmark–Norway, whose ability to tax shipping in the

Sound, the narrow passage connecting the Baltic with the North Sea, gave Danish kings a source of revenue beyond the control of the land-holding aristocracy that could be used to build a navy. By the 1510s, that navy was well provided with guns and included some of the largest warships in the world.

The Swedish nobility had revolted against Danish rule in 1501, and King Christian II (who ruled Denmark from 1513 to 1523) used his fleet to reassert his sovereignty, occupying Stockholm in 1520. Under the leadership of Gustav Vasa, the Swedes responded by building up their naval strength, initially by purchasing armed merchantmen from the Hanse and then with an indigenous building programme. The struggle acquired a new dimension in 1523 when Christian was overthrown by rebellious nobles and fled with his fleet to the Netherlands, from whence he sought to return with Habsburg support. Growing Swedish naval strength, helped by an infusion of assets seized while reforming the church in 1527, enabled Gustav to consolidate his power. Christian's threatened intervention materialized in 1531, in the form of an invasion of Norway, but the Baltic forces - Denmark, Sweden and the Hanse – banded together and defeated it, capturing Christian. Lübeck played the role of spoiler, siding first with the Swedes - a Lübeckian fleet took Stockholm for Gustav in 1522 – and then with one or the other of the contenders for the Danish throne, but consistently striving for commercial advantage and gaining control of Copenhagen and the Sound between 1534 and 1535.

The struggle was effectively resolved when a combined Swedish–Danish force defeated Lübeck's fleet between 1535 and 1536, landing an army that secured Copenhagen

Plan of a mid sixteenthcentury Swedish warship. A comparatively small vessel, it has a broadside battery of ten guns a side, no doubt newly cast of Swedish bronze, and a full ship rig. At this point, Scandinavian naval architecture was rapidly approaching par with the best European practice. Not ordinarily required to cruise far from home, Swedish warships could carry heavier offensive ordnance at the expense of provisions.



THE BALTIC, 1563-70

The sixteenth century saw momentous change in power relationships in the Baltic, driven by the increasing importance of gunpowder at sea and the political fallout of the Reformation. Fuelled by taxes levied on shipping in the leads connecting the Baltic and Atlantic, Denmark built up its fleet and by the 1510s possessed a powerful navy. But the Swedes rose against Danish rule in 1501 and - though it took over three decades established Vasa-ruled Sweden as a major power. Both Sweden and Denmark went Protestant, converting Church property to royal control, and in 1525 the Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights declared himself a Lutheran, and dissolved the order. The Livonian Knights, earlier absorbed by the Teutonic order, briefly asserted their independence only to have their territories carved up by Russia, Poland-Lithuania, and Sweden. Meanwhile, Denmark and the Hanseatic League lost out to the cannon-armed Swedish navy in the struggle for Baltic hegemony.

and the island of Zealand for Christian III, the Protestant claimant to the Danish throne. Nevertheless, Habsburg intervention in favour of Christian II remained a possibility until 1544 when Emperor Charles V abandoned his cause. Meanwhile, the Swedes and Danes eyed one another warily and the Swedes continued their naval programme, building a significant galley fleet from the 1540s.

Apart from the emergence of Sweden as an independent power, the most important consequence of this struggle was the imposition of a *pax Baltica*, whereby Sweden and Denmark purged the Baltic of piracy by implicit agreement. Neither nation had a large merchant marine, and the principal beneficiaries of this policy were the Dutch, whose efficient unarmed ships swelled their profits. The next decades saw a steady rise in Swedish naval power, marked by the mass production of bronze cannon and the construction between 1560 and 1563 of seven major warships of 600–1,800 tons displacement, as well as smaller vessels. Swedish attempts to regulate trade in the eastern and northern Baltic inevitably led to friction with Denmark and Lübeck, and the accession in Sweden and Denmark of Erik XIV (who ruled Sweden from 1560 to 1568) and Frederik II (Denmark's king from 1559 to 1588), both young, ambitious and energetic, led to war.

Danish interference with Erik's plans to marry a Hessian princess provided the casus belli. On 30 May 1563 Danish and Swedish squadrons joined in battle off Bornholm in the first of seven major naval engagements in what historian Jan Glete has termed the first modern naval war, modern in the sense that fleets fought not to transport armies to their objectives, but to achieve what naval theorists would later term control of the sea. The battles were hard-fought and chaotic, and the details have been largely lost, but some generalizations can be made. The Danes and Lübeckers preferred traditional tactics of boarding and entering, while the Swedes, with a newly formed navy and lacking in maritime traditions, relied on stand-off gunnery, often using booms to hold enemy ships at bay while the guns took their toll. Both fleets organized their vessels in groups of three, with two smaller ships supporting a larger one, reflecting Edward III's tactical arrangements at Sluys two centuries earlier. With the Danes and Lübeckers, the intent seems to have been to provide reinforcements for the larger ship that played the pivotal role in a boarding fight. The Swedes seem to have relied on the gunfire of the larger ship, using the smaller ones in support where necessary. All three navies possessed large warships, although the Danes and Lübeckers continued to place heavy reliance on armed merchantmen. Purposebuilt Swedish warships increasingly asserted their superiority as the war progressed.

The climactic engagement was the second battle of Bornholm, on 7 July 1565, in which a Swedish fleet of 49 ships, under Klas Horn, engaged 22 Danish and 14 Lübeck ships, under the Danish admiral Otto Rud. The allies began the engagement shortly after noon with the advantage of the wind, Rud laying his flagship, *Jegermesther*, alongside Horn's *St Erik*, both vessels of 90 guns although we know nothing of their size. In the chaotic action that followed, the Swedish



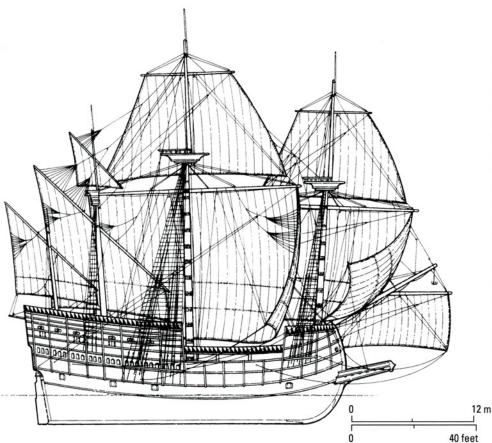
Grip was rammed and sunk by a large Lübecker and the battle resolved itself into a series of ship-to-ship duels that emanated outwards from the flagships. The issue was settled after nightfall when the Swedish *Gyllende Lejon* caught fire and exploded, scattering the two fleets and leaving *Jegermesther* surrounded. Rud struck his colours at 21.30 hours.

Jegermesther surrendered, with 1,100 killed or captured; a Danish vessel and a Lübecker were sunk. The Swedes lost *Grip* and *Gyllende Lejon* as well as a third ship captured, losing 362 killed and 523 seriously wounded, in addition to the complements of the vessels lost, significantly fewer casualties than the allies. The Swedes had taken the measure of their more experienced enemies; stand-off gunnery was their chosen instrument. It was a major benchmark in warfare at sea.

By 1566 the Swedish advantage was apparent. After a partial and indecisive engagement off Öland on 26 July 1566, the allies disengaged. Two days later an unseasonable storm struck, and 11 Danish and 3 Lübeckian ships were driven ashore, with the loss of some 6,000 men. The Swedes also suffered damage, particularly among their larger ships, but weathered the storm. The Swedish navy was unchallenged in 1567, but domestic turmoil attending Erik XIV's overthrow the following year prevented the Swedes from pressing home their advantage and the war ended in mutual exhaustion in 1570.

As far as the Scandinavian kingdoms were concerned, the result was a draw in political terms. Denmark was forced to accept Swedish independence while Sweden was unable to bring Denmark to heel. Operationally, the war demonstrated that merchant ships fitted for war by adding men and guns could not stand up to purpose-built warships armed with heavy guns. Lacking the resources to build a specialized war fleet, and undercut commercially by increasingly efficient Dutch shipping, Lübeck was finished as a major power.

The Baltic War of 1563 to 1570 was a milestone, not only in naval strategy but - or so we surmise - in the design and construction of purpose-built, artillery-armed sailing warships. Unfortunately, we know little about them. The Baltic is small, so they did not have to be provisioned for extended voyages. In principle, more and heavier guns could have replaced provisions. In fact the Swedes seem to have done just that, although the details are missing. Our one firm data point is a single ship, the Lübeck-built Jesus of Lübeck, a carrack of some 1,050 tons displacement. Purchased by Henry VIII of England in 1544, and documented in the Anthony Anthony Roll, an illustrated naval ordnance inventory of 1545, she ended her career in September 1568 as part of John Hawkins's ill-fated expedition to New Spain, caught with the carrack Minion and the small barque Judith in the harbour of San Juan de Ulloa (Vera Cruz, Mexico) by the entire Flota de Nueva España, the annual treasure fleet. A blistering artillery duel ensued, and within an hour English gunfire had 'blown up the Almirante [the vice flagship] and so shattered the Capitana [the flagship] and another vessel that they settled to the bottom'. Minion and Judith escaped. Jesus



ARMED MERCHANTMAN

A modern rendering of an armed merchantman, probably Flemish, based on a 1565 drawing by Pieter Brueghel the Elder. The ship's type is indeterminate, but the projecting beakhead suggests an affinity with the galleon. The standing and running rigging and sail plan are fully developed and are representative of those of large European sailing vessels until the advent of the spritsail topmast around 1600. Lateen topsails, shown here on the mizzen mast, must have been terribly awkward to work.

was abandoned, to be meticulously surveyed by Spanish scribes. Due to their labours, and the Anthony Roll, we know a good deal about her armament.

Her biggest guns were 24-25 pounders (I have calculated projectile sizes based on the recorded barrel weights). She had only nine of these: two in the gunroom in chase and seven on the main gundeck; three of the nine were pedreros. Her heaviest pieces were two bronze culverins in the foremost broadside ports; her upper gundeck included two 6-8-pound sakers in the stern chase and two 10–12-pound half-culverins at the bow. We must be careful, for if *Jesus* was Lübeck-built she was armed in England. Nevertheless, she was probably representative of the more heavily armed merchantmen that contended for control of the Baltic between 1563 and 1570. Just over 2 per cent of her displacement tonnage consisted of ordnance, on average only a third as much as the race-built English galleons that defeated the Spanish Armada in 1588. The first race-built galleon was launched in 1573, so the comparison is not inappropriate, although we should remember that *Jesus* was armed and fitted out to cruise - and trade - far from home. That Jesus and Minion could wreak havoc on what we must presume to have been the most heavily armed and best-manned Spanish galleons of their day speaks volumes for their effectiveness as gun platforms. It also suggests that the Swedish warships that took the measure of the best that Denmark and Lübeck had to offer between 1563 and 1570 must have been extraordinarily well armed for their day.



CHAPTER FOUR



THE GALLEY

LEPANTO, THE CLIMACTIC BATTLE in the struggle for control of the Mediterranean between the Ottoman Turks and Christendom, shown here on a Venetian mural with the cartography of the site. Lepanto was the largest galley fight ever and one of the hardest fought. Some 208 Christian galleys and 6 galleasses carrying some 80,000 men engaged 230 Muslim galleys and 70 galiots, many of them large North African craft nearly as large as galleys, carrying 90,000. Here, the two fleets are shown twice, in pre-battle array on the sides and locked in combat in the centre. In fact, neither side came on so neatly arrayed but the artist has accurately depicted the fustas and bergantines backing up the Christian line.

THE GALLEY

Principal categories: round ships driven by sails and intended for trade, and long ships driven by oars and meant for war. In fact, it was not quite that simple: the crews of oared warships often carried trade goods and, in the Mediterranean, larger relatives of oared fighting vessels, driven by sails, but using oars to overcome adverse winds and currents, were used to transport precious cargoes from antiquity until the sixteenth century, when rising wages and improvements in sailing-ship design rendered them uncompetitive. Before heavy gunpowder ordnance became common these large galleys had important military advantages. Our main concern here is the evolution of the Mediterranean ordinary galley – a warship propelled by eighteen or more banks of oars worked from fixed benches mounted on a continuous upper deck – and from that perspective the distinction between long ship and round ship is valid. For completeness we should note that the term galley applied loosely to all specialized oared vessels and had the subsidiary meaning of 'warship'.

The reasons for the divergence in design were straightforward. In antiquity, ship-to-ship fights were generally decided in hand-to-hand combat. Numbers counted, and faster, more manoeuvrable vessels could bring more men into action more swiftly. Early sailing ships moved against the wind with difficulty, and the logical solution was a long, low-lying hull driven by oars. A narrow hull with parallel sides maximized the number of oarsmen as a function of displacement, while a low freeboard gave the oarsmen greater mechanical advantage and efficiency. The advantage was multiplied if the oarsmen were free men and combatants, almost invariably the case until the mid 1500s. Finally, rowing is an oscillatory motion. The vessel slows during the recovery portion of the stroke, so the power stroke must not only overcome the resistance of the water, but the mass of the vessel. Since acceleration is proportional to propulsive force divided by mass, lighter vessels are thus faster.

There were, however, drawbacks: long, narrow hulls with low freeboards are inherently unseaworthy, and the high bulwarks of sailing ships of any size offered important defensive advantages. Nevertheless, oared speed, manoeuvrability and greater numbers usually carried the day. Moreover, the economic benefits of warfare afloat extended to raiding ashore, for which light oared vessels were ideal. Wherever specialized warships emerged as a distinct type, these basic relationships held good into the high Middle Ages; the contrast between the Viking longship and the beamier, cargo-carrying *knarr* is a classic example. But the distinction between long ship and round ship appeared earliest, and was pressed furthest, in the Mediterranean, finding its ultimate expression in the cannon-armed war galley.

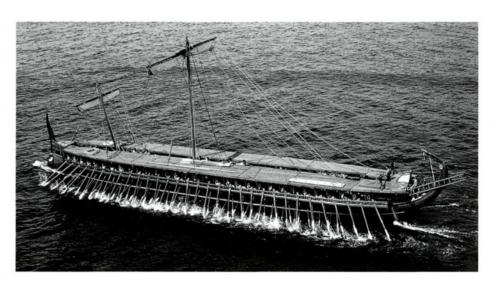
The lineage of the cannon-armed galley extends to classical times, although

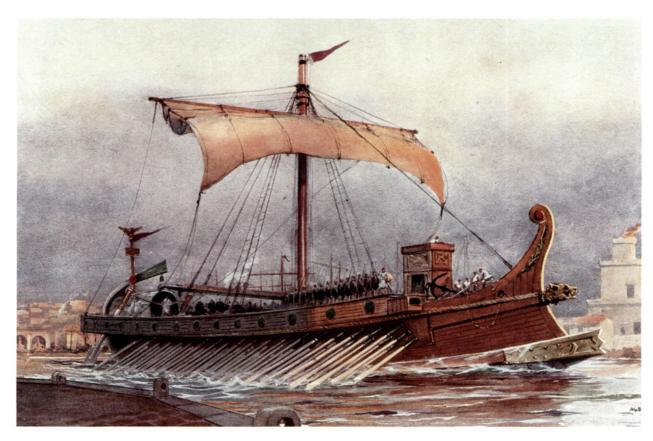
A Raphael drawing of a late fifteenth or early sixteenthcentury Venetian galley under sail. Given the realistic depiction of men and vessel and the fact that it is rowed two men to an oar, a scaloccio, it is probably a small galiot or fusta. Such vessels could make good time in light and moderate winds, but their shallow hulls' limited resistance to sideways drift made them mediocre sailers with the wind abeam.



not in any straightforward fashion. Both classical trireme and sixteenth-century trireme were propelled by oarsmen who worked in clusters of three; both were inherently offensive and attacked straight ahead; both were highly vulnerable to flank attack; both were most effective when used in ordered squadrons – and that was about that. The classical trireme's waterline ram was designed to shatter enemy hulls; the early modern war galley's equivalent was an above-water spur that served as a bridge for boarding and capture. The classical trireme's oarsmen

Olympias, a full-sized replica of a classical Athenian trireme, built in 1985-87 and operated for several years thereafter. Propelled by 170 oarsmen rowing on three vertically superimposed levels, such vessels were far faster under oars than their early modern successors. Below, a modern artist's reconstruction of a firstcentury AD Roman trireme. Note the waterline ram, designed to spring the seams of opposing vessels.





rowed in vertically superimposed layers, the lower oarsmen working deep in the hull; their early modern successors worked side by side on the upper deck, exposed to the elements. The formations of classical galley warfare were many and varied, driven by the fast trireme's extreme manoeuvrability and the striking power of its ram. The early modern galley depended in battle on the line abreast, with each galley protecting its neighbours' flanks.

The lesson to be drawn from the comparison is that the Mediterranean environment fostered first the development, and then the dominance, in two periods widely separated in time, of highly specialized oared warships that pressed the propulsive capabilities of human muscle to the limit. Galley design was not static but evolved constantly in response to changing economic, social and political circumstances. Palaeontologists have recorded the evolution of remarkably similar animal species in widely separated geological eras in response to similar conditions. The evolution of large, unrelated, sabre-toothed, cat-like carnivores — like the war galley, highly specialized predators — on several occasions is an apposite example of this phenomenon. Like the sabre-toothed tiger, the war galley evolved to fill an ecological niche, in the galley's case, in what we might term the strategic ecology of the Mediterranean. As with the sabre-toothed tiger, evolutionary forces pushed the war galley towards greater offensive lethality. And like the sabre-toothed tiger, the war galley flourished only so long as its environment provided adequate sustenance. Although we should not push

the analogy too far, it underlines the dynamic nature of design evolution and the manner in which the war galley functioned as

part of a complex system.

The development of oared warships in the Dark Ages is obscure. Throughout the eleventh century, full-sized Mediterranean galleys were powered by oarsmen working in two vertically superimposed banks, with the lower oarsmen working below deck.

By 1200 the oarsmen were all above deck,

and the dominant design was the bireme, rowed by two oarsmen

to a bench and four to a

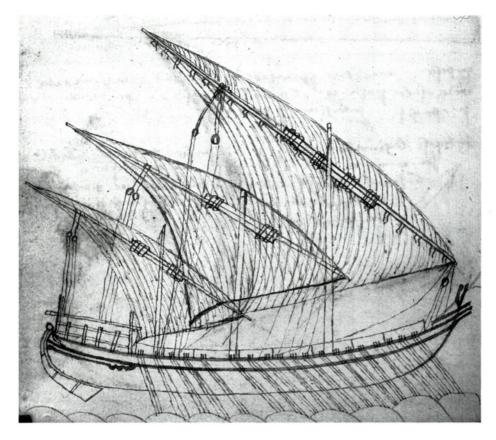
A fragment of the outer rail of a seventeenth-century Venetian galley, probably from the stern based on the sharp upward curve and elaborate carving.
Renaissance and Baroque shipwrights did not neatly differentiate between form and function and warships were often elaborately decorated.

bank, each with his own oar. The outer oars were pulled against thole pins set in longitudinal beams, mounted outboard of the hull on an outrigger to give the oarsmen a better mechanical advantage, while the inner oars were pulled through holes in the hull. For long passages galleys were powered by lateen sails set on one to three masts; spars and sails were lowered for combat. By mid century galleys had hinged rudders that could be removed for beaching stern first, although traditional quarter rudders were retained. Christian galleys of the western Mediterranean almost certainly had fighting superstructures at the bow, and perhaps at the stern as well, although we know little about these vessels. During the thirteenth century, the holes in the hull for the inner oars were replaced by thole pins on a second outboard longitudinal beam just below the first, and commanders began squeezing a third oarsman on to the benches to provide additional fighting manpower. The experiment proved beneficial in terms of propulsion, and the third oarsman became permanent.

By 1290, galley design had evolved to exploit the third oarsman fully. The result was the trireme *alla sensile*, 'in the simple fashion' in Italian, although the forest of closely spaced oars hardly seems simple to us. Though we cannot explain why in detail, the rowing system was optimal, for it quickly became standardized and remained dominant on ordinary galleys for two-and-a-half centuries. When the *alla sensile* system was finally abandoned it was not due to the appearance of a superior design, but because of a scarcity of the skilled

Roman relief carving of two oared warships, so identified by the waterline rams. The oarsmen of the vessel at the top appear to have worked on more than one level, though it is difficult to be sure.





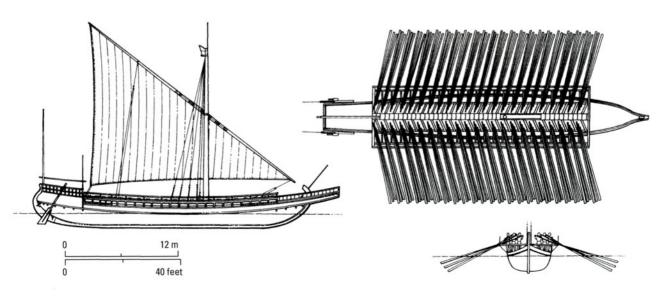
oarsmen that it demanded – or, more precisely, because of a lack of money with which to pay them.

Ordinary triremes *alla sensile* might have had as few as eighteen banks of oars or, exceptionally, sixteen. From about 1500 until the mid 1530s the most common number was twenty-five banks and twenty-four thereafter, with a bench missing on the starboard side to accommodate the skiff and another on the port side for the cook's galley. Such galleys were described as 'armed with 144 oarsmen

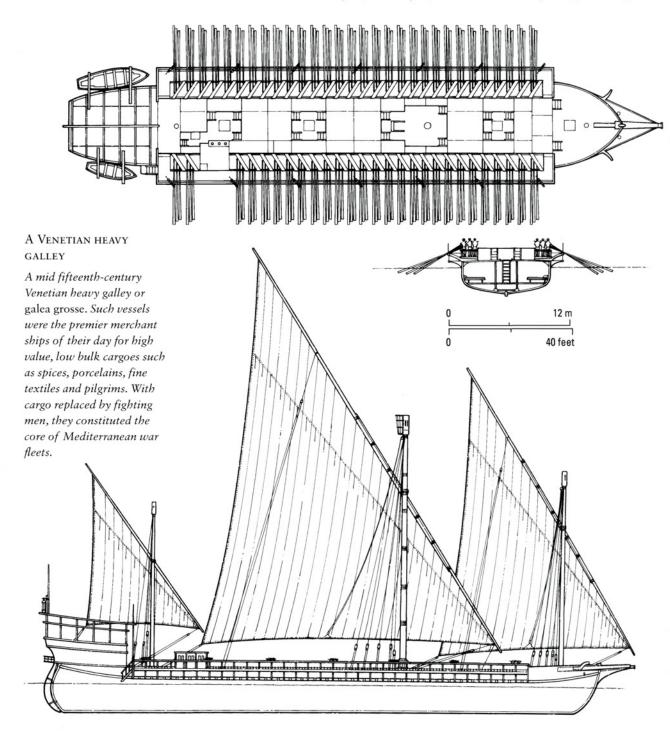
A contemporary depiction of a mid fifteenth-century Venetian galea grosse, a heavy or merchant galley. The oars are in groups of three, characteristic of the alla sensile rowing system; the missing banks of oars indicate the location of the cooking area. Heavy galleys were efficient sailing vessels for their day, and oarsmen were as important for defending the vessel as for combating adverse winds.

A VENETIAN GALLEY ALLA SENSILE

A 23-bank Venetian ordinary galley alla sensile, c. 1400. Note the raised prow, handy as a boarding bridge and firing platform when engaging ordinary galleys and smaller vessels. Such vessels were significantly faster under oars than heavy galleys, but engaged them at a significant disadvantage because of their smaller crews and lower height. Later, one bank of oars was left vacant on each side for the skiff (starboard) and the cook's galley (port).



to row 3 by 3 from poop to prow'. The oarsmen's benches were separated by a narrow raised gangway, the corsia, and were angled forward twenty degrees, forming a series of 'V's pointing towards the stern so that the oarsmen could complete their strokes without fouling one another's oars. The oars were pulled against thole pins mounted on a longitudinal outrigger, the apostis, that was supported by transverse beams, one forward and one aft, to form the rowing frame. The oars varied slightly in length, inboard oarsmen pulling the longest



and outboard oarsmen the shortest. The poop deck was level with the top of the corsia and tilted upwards at the rear for visibility; this was the galley's 'brain', occupied by captain, pilot, helmsman and reserve fighting men. The bow forward of the rowing frame was the heart of the galley's offensive power, where fighting men would muster to board enemy vessels by means of the spur. The spur was tipped with iron and was sufficiently stout to lodge in an enemy vessel's planking or to ride over an enemy's apostis, breaking it down in a flank attack. In either case, the spur served as a combination grappling hook and boarding bridge. Western galleys often had an elevated fighting platform above the bow, the *arrumbada* in Spanish, from which crossbowmen, archers and later arquebusiers could rain fire. Triremes typically carried two lateen sails on as many masts; sails, spars and even masts could be lowered and stowed inside the corsia before combat.

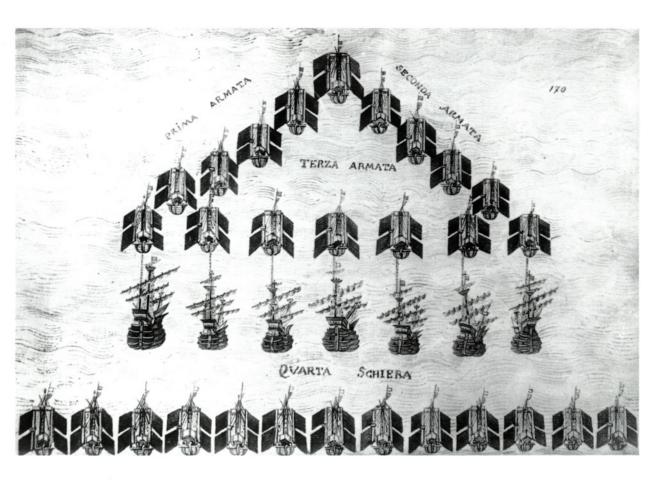
Ordinary galleys were not the only oared fighting vessels. Great galleys, galee grosse in Italian (converted merchant galleys, although some were purpose-built as military transports), formed the tactical backbone of fifteenth-century galley fleets. Slower under oars than ordinary galleys, their high freeboards and stout bulwarks gave crossbowmen, archers and handgunners the advantages of height and protection when engaging lower-lying vessels and made them a difficult proposition for ordinary galleys to handle. As we saw in our discussion of Zonchio, how they were handled could spell the difference between defeat and victory. Mediterranean commanders did not consider tactical homogeneity inherently good and employed larger than normal, or exceptionally heavily armed, ordinary galleys as tactical focal points for victory. The former were called bastardas; the latter were called lantern galleys for their ornate triple stern lanterns, vital for signalling and station-keeping at night and the ultimate symbols of authority. Confusingly, not all bastardas were lantern galleys, nor were all lantern galleys bastardas. The key distinction was how heavily the vessel was armed, and in Mediterranean terms that meant the number and quality of fighting men, artillery entering into the equation later. Perhaps because they were comparatively wasteful in terms of manpower, bastardas were not numerous during the era of the trireme alla sensile, although quadriremes alla sensile rowed four by four were used as lantern galleys. Emperor Charles V's Real (royal galley) for the 1535 Tunis expedition was such a vessel, of twenty-six banks (thus requiring 208 oarsmen), as was Andrea Doria's Capitana in 1539.

Next, although not necessarily in strategic importance – for galley fleets rarely engaged one another in battle – came smaller oared fighting craft: in descending order of size, galiots, *fustas* and *bergantines*. Galiots were scaled-down galleys, rowed two by two rather than three by three. They were typically of eighteen to twenty banks, but large galiots could have as many banks as an ordinary galley and, although lower, were as long. Although at a serious disadvantage to ordinary galleys in a head-on clash in line abreast, galiots were handier and more manoeuvrable and could – and not infrequently did –

overwhelm galleys from flank and rear in a mêlée. Economical in their manpower demands, galiots were raiding craft *par excellence*. *Fustas* were smaller still, rowed two by two like a galiot, but with fewer banks, ten to fifteen being typical. Like galiots, *fustas* were effective raiding vessels; less demanding of their oarsmen, they were useful in battle for passing messages and transferring reinforcements. *Bergantines* were the smallest of all, with ten to fifteen banks and a single oar and oarsman to the bench. Armed with one or two swivel guns, they were useful raiding and dispatch vessels. Perhaps their most celebrated use was in Mexico in 1521, when prefabricated *bergantines* were constructed at Spanish conquistador Hernán Cortés' orders and were carried overland to Lake Texcoco to blockade the Aztec capital of Tenochtitlán, sealing the doom of Montezuma's empire.

So far we have said little about the relationship of galleys - using the word to encompass all oared fighting craft – to sailing ships, and a few words are in order. Small sailing ships and coastal villages were the war galley's natural prey. By contrast, before the advent of gunpowder, large and well-armed merchant vessels posed a virtually insoluble problem. The fate of the Venetian Levant convoy of 1264, caught without escort by a squadron of eighteen Genoese galleys off Valona, south-west Albania, makes the point. The convoy consisted of twelve tarettes, single-decked sailing vessels displacing about 150 tons, half a dozen smaller craft and a single large, round ship, the Roccaforte, of 750 tons. After defending the smaller craft for some hours, the outmanned Venetians retreated aboard the Roccaforte, where they effectively defied the Genoese. Two points are worth noting: the slowness with which the Genoese, despite their overwhelming numerical superiority, overcame Venetian resistance, and the Roccaforte's unassailability. The lessons are clear: before the advent of heavy gunpowder ordnance, galleys engaged sailing vessels of moderate size at a tactical disadvantage and were effectively impotent against competently defended large ones; improvements in sailing-ship design and construction made the problem worse. By the 1420s the Genoese were building carracks of 600 to 900 tons displacement, and they were not alone. Such vessels, prestige state warships par excellence, were essentially immune to attack by galleys.

The above relationships changed fundamentally with the appearance during the 1510s of ordinary galleys armed with main, centre-line bow guns firing balls of 30 to 50 pounds or more, with hull-smashing velocity. The resultant tactical revolution depended on an awareness of the potential of heavy naval ordnance, upon a willingness to expend money to develop that potential and on the realization that centre-line gun-armed galleys were enormously more effective when employed in squadrons in line abreast. Technically, it required the development of a recoil system that could harness the weight and power of such guns without causing damage to the hull. The solution was a wooden box in which the gun was suspended from its trunnions, mounted in a track along which it slid backwards into the corsia on recoil, hence the name *cannone da corsia* in



Italian. As an added benefit, the gun could be pulled back nearly to midships to trim the galley for easy rowing and heavy weather; no small matter with a gun weighing 7,000 pounds mounted on the bow of a hull displacing 170 tons, figures representative of mid sixteenth-century Venetian triremes. Shipwrights compensated for the weight by designing hulls that were fuller at the bow and finer at the stern, giving the underwater lines a graceful, fish-like shape.

This elegant solution to a difficult problem was almost certainly a product of the Venetian Arsenal. The first report of a really powerful gun mounted on a galley's bow involves a basilisk – a generic term for a long gun of exceptional power, firing a ball of 50 pounds or more – on a Venetian *galea grosse* in 1501. (Venice's disastrous defeats of 1499 and 1500 were no doubt a powerful spur to innovation!) Although there is no evidence that the Venetians learned to combine an ordinary galley's speed and mobility with the power of a basilisk in time to influence the outcome of the war with the Ottoman Turks from 1499 to 1503, they must have done so shortly thereafter.

Whatever their origins, war galleys with hull-smashing centre-line bow guns left their first imprint on the historical record in April 1513 in a series of combats in Brest Roads, when a squadron of six French galleys shattered an English fleet that included some of the largest and most heavily armed carracks of the day, the famous *Mary Rose* among them. The galleys were surely the cream of twelve

Diagram from the Venetian Admiral Cristoforo da Canal's treatise, Della Militzia Maritima, written about 1550, showing a battle formation integrating galleys and sailing warships. In fact, the disparate capabilities and limitations of the two rendered tactical co-operation all but impossible and it was seldom achieved.

An eighteenth-century engraving based on a contemporary painting of the engagement between the French and English fleets off Portsmouth, 19 July 1545. The Mary Rose has just gone down, a victim of overloading, open lower gunports, ill discipline among her crew or some combination thereof. Her topmasts can be seen in the centre of the channel. The action - perhaps the largest naval engagement to date illustrated the difficulty of controlling in battle combined fleets of oared and sailing warships.

ordinary galleys built in 1511 for Louis XII of France in Genoa and Savona and of two *bastardas* built in Venice.

The combat sheds light on capabilities at a pivotal time, and illustrates in microcosm our revolution in firepower. The French commander, Prégent de Bidoux, had brought his galleys north from the Mediterranean the previous autumn and had based them in northern Brittany, poised to descend on the English coast as had Genoese galley squadrons during the Hundred Years War. Frustrated by the winter weather, he found himself outflanked when Henry VIII's fleet, under Sir Edward Howard, arrived off Brest in April 1513, threatening to take the city and cutting de Bidoux off from the main French fleet. Prégent de Bidoux came south, shooting his way through Howard's force and sinking one ship outright in the process. The English were shocked by the power of the French guns, almost certainly bronze basilisks charged with corned powder. Handling his force with a sure confidence that suggests prior experience, de Bidoux withdrew into a narrow bay flanked by shore batteries, his galleys pulled up stern first against the shore, with their guns pointed to sea, a classic and all but unassailable defensive tactic. Howard sought to rally his shaken force with a bold move: a direct assault with all of his oared vessels. It failed in the face of superior French firepower and Howard was killed in the attempt. It was, as Nicholas Rodger has said, an entirely new way of waging war at sea.

By the 1520s Mediterranean war galleys commonly sported main centre-line

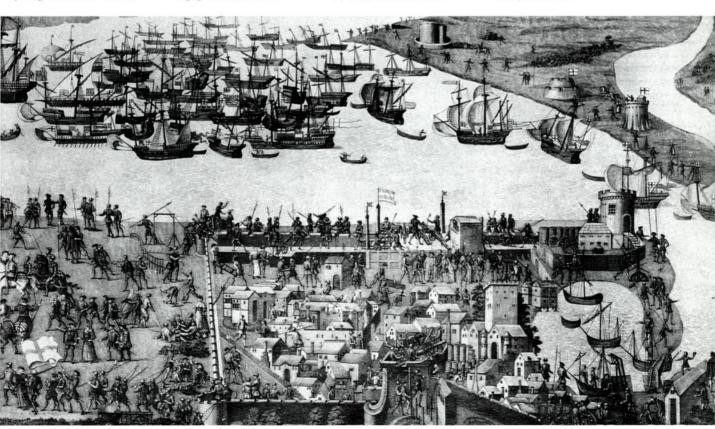




CHANNEL BATTLES, 1500-1600

France and England were at war from 1492 until 1525, again from 1543–46 and yet again in 1549–50. The

wars' naval dimensions are suggested by the dates and places of notable engagements, above. Imperial ambitions, notably those of England's Henry VIII, were a rich source of conflict; so was the spillover from England's wars with the Scots, whom the French were perennially ready to assist.



bow guns with hull-smashing - and wall-smashing - power. So armed, the ordinary galley quickly elbowed the great galley from the line of battle and progressively reduced the tactical viability of the carrack until, by the 1570s, none was left in the Mediterranean. The cannon-armed galley established the basis of a system of warfare that dominated the Mediterranean until the 1630s. That system had an enormous thirst for human and fiscal resources that only Habsburg Spain and the Ottoman Empire - and France, when it chose - could meet. As the system matured, second-tier naval powers – Genoa, the Papal States and the North African Muslim emirates - were reduced to subsidiary status. Venice hung on – barely – by dint of shrewd diplomacy, superior technology and operational competence. But as powerful as they were, the galley fleets that formed the operational bedrock of the Mediterranean system of warfare at sea carried within them the seeds of strategic decay. To understand why that was we must examine the war galley in some detail, focusing on the period from 1530 to 1570 when the galley fleet's tactical power and strategic potential reached their apogee.

Tactically, the war galley with a heavy main, centre-line bow gun was

A woodcut of a 1561 battle between galleys and carracks ... or so we presume; the low projecting spur on the bow of the large sailing vessel, centre, is a feature known only from Flemish artists' depictions. It is unlikely that the galleys would have closed to within small arms range of their loftier opponents, as shown, before bombarding them into submission.



inherently offensive. Engagements between individual galleys and small squadrons tended to be all-or-nothing affairs, with the losers suffering heavily and the winners getting off scot-free, or nearly so. Conversely, large, full-blown engagements, in which both sides were able to form in line abreast, tended to be inconclusive. Galleys could row astern and, covered by fire from their bow ordnance, retreat to a beach or anchorage and pull up stern first. A key limiting factor was the number of galleys that could effectively manoeuvre in line abreast. As any aircraft pilot with formation experience can attest, line abreast is the most difficult of formations: errors in station-keeping propagate outwards from the lead ship, multiplying their effect in crack-the-whip fashion. In practical terms, this imposed an inflexible limit of fifty-three to fifty-four galleys on a squadron required to manoeuvre, and perhaps ten more for a squadron that only had to move straight ahead. The galley's lean and speedy look notwithstanding, large formations would have been hard-pressed to maintain more than two knots, with the outboard galleys' oarsmen working themselves to exhaustion.

Beyond inherent physical limits, the Mediterranean powers used galleys that were effectively indistinguishable in very different ways. The Spanish galley was a

The 1583 Spanish assault on Terciera, from murals in the palace of Don Álvaro de Bazán at Viso del Marques in La Mancha. From contemporary accounts of the action we know that the galleys supported the boats filled with assault troops with cannon fire. In tactical sophistication the action was well in advance of the 1915 Gallipoli landings.



tactical assault vessel, designed to bring the maximum load of ordnance and fighting men to the battle line without compromising dash speed; the French galley was also a tactical assault vessel, but with more emphasis on artillery; the Venetian galley was a strategic assault craft, designed for maximum speed under oars to reinforce seaside fortresses and port cities under threat, without being embroiled in a boarding fight; the Turkish galley was a strategic transport, designed to carry men, ordnance and supplies to the site of a siege and to support them once there. These differences were consistent, significant and accurate reflections of differences in strategic goals, resource availability, organization and social structure. Differences in design and construction were marginal, mainly involving fighting superstructures that could be quickly added or removed. More important were the socially based differences: Venetian oarsmen were predominantly free men until after the battle of Lepanto in 1571, while Spanish oarsmen were almost entirely convicts and slaves by 1550. Unsurprisingly, the Venetians placed greater emphasis on accurate gunnery and so on.

Returning to performance, a 24-bank trireme alla sensile armed three-bythree and with a 30-50-pound main centre-line gun, fully manned and with a freshly cleaned, well-greased bottom, free of barnacles and weeds, could manage a dash speed under oars of some $7^{1/2}$ knots (nautical miles per hour) for about 20 minutes and a cruise speed of 31/2 to 4 knots for 8 hours or so. These things were done at a cost, for the ciurma, the rowing gang, required immense amounts of biscuit - hard tack, a daily ration of 26 ounces per man, supplemented by fresh bread when hard rowing was anticipated - plus perhaps three-quarters of a cup of beans or garbanzos (chickpeas), an occasional fish or meat ration, small amounts of olive oil, wine and vinegar and, above all, water. Water was critical, tactically because the oarsmen would collapse in the Mediterranean summer if their intake fell below an absolute minimum of half a gallon a day, and strategically because the galley's slender hull left little room for stowage. Galleys had to land frequently - two weeks at most - to recharge their water barrels and more frequently as, for reasons explained below, crews grew larger. The water requirement placed stringent limits on individual galleys and squadrons and restricted fleets even more severely, tying them closely to shore.

To compound matters, the inexorable tactical logic of galley warfare dictated a constant increase in the amount of forward-firing ordnance, and galleys began sporting flanking pieces alongside the main centre-line gun, ideally 12-pound demi-culverins or perriers of equivalent weight, throwing a somewhat heavier stone ball. By the mid 1530s, the most heavily armed ordinary galleys had a second, smaller pair of forward-firing guns at the bow: *sacres* (sakers) or *medios sacres* (half-sakers), firing balls of 6–9 pounds. Most western galleys mounted swivel guns on the *arrumbada*.

The weight of ordnance could be impressive. In 1536, the *Capitana* (flagship) of Don Álvaro de Bazán the Elder, Captain General of the Galleys of Spain, carried a *cañon grueso* (large cannon), two half-culverins, three *sacres*, a *pedrero*

(stone-thrower) and an array of swivel guns on the *arrumbada*. Assuming representative weights for the guns and a hull 140 feet long, 16^{1/2} feet wide, and drawing 4^{1/3} feet, Bazán's *Capitana* displaced about 186 tons and carried 9^{3/4} tons of ordnance. Some 5.2 per cent of the galley's displacement tonnage thus consisted of ordnance, a figure not matched by sailing warships until the English navy's first race-built galleons were commissioned half a century later. Moreover, in contrast to galleons, the majority of a war galley's ordnance – all but about half a ton in this case – was purely offensive. Bazán's *Capitana* was exceptional: of the twenty-three galleys under his command, only nine approached it in weight of metal. It was not, however, unique. The weight of ordnance aboard Mediterranean galleys grew steadily, displacement increasing accordingly, reaching 200 tons for an ordinary galley by mid century and 300 tons a century later. That growth had important long-term consequences.

The difficulty was the tactical importance of dash speed under oars, for increased weight entailed disproportionate numbers of additional oarsmen if speed was not to be compromised. Venetian experiments in the 1520s with a quinquireme alla sensile, five men and five oars to the bench, showed that a 50 per cent increase in displacement required a 100 per cent increase in power – oarsmen - if dash speed was not to be compromised. That was indicative, and the problem went beyond the technical and tactical to encompass socio-economic factors. The trireme alla sensile was an optimal design, but it was strictly limited in size and depended on highly skilled, salaried oarsmen. By the 1550s inflation had put oarsmen's salaries beyond the reach of western Mediterranean powers and they instead turned to slaves and convicts, by definition less skilled and motivated. Individual oars gave way to a single large oar for each bench, pulled by grips attached to the oar's rear with ladder-like attachments, from whence is derived the Italian name a scaloccio, 'like a ladder'. With this system, three men to an oar proved inadequate, for a single oar was less efficient than individual oars pulled by skilled oarsmen. Four men to an oar were needed to equal the trireme alla sensile's dash speed, and the additional oarsmen entailed an increase in displacement. That was the bad news; the good news was the a scaloccio system's flexibility. Only one skilled oarsman per oar was needed, and oarsmen could easily be added or removed according to the tactical situation.

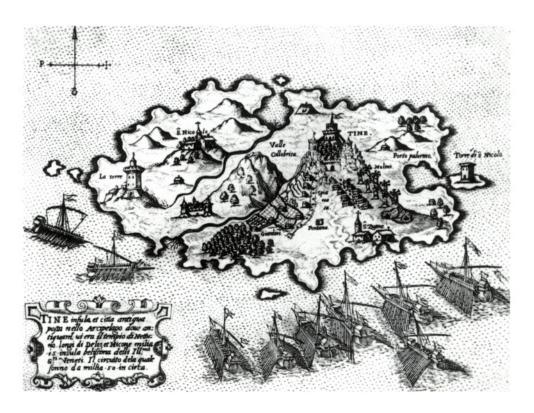
Commanders *in extremis* might promise slaves their freedom in exchange for victory – as did both commanders-in-chief at Lepanto – and arm them if they were co-religionists, but servile oarsmen were not combatants, and additional soldiers were required to guard them. That further increased displacement, requiring still more oarsmen to maintain tactical dash speed. The result was a self-regenerative feedback loop that called for more and more oarsmen and larger hulls, progressively eroding tactical flexibility and strategic radius of action. A Spanish ordinary galley of the 1520s with 144 free oarsmen carried 40 to 90 *compañeros sobresalientes*, sailors doubling as marine infantry, and 20 to 25 *oficiales*, an untranslatable term that requires explanation. *Oficiales* were the war

An allegory of Lepanto by Giorgio Vasari, showing the opposing fleets about to clash against the backdrop of the Greek coast. The spectre of death hanging over the battle is real enough, but the geometric regularity of the arrayed fleets is anything but, and Vasari's Muslim order of battle inaccurately mirrors that of the Christians.

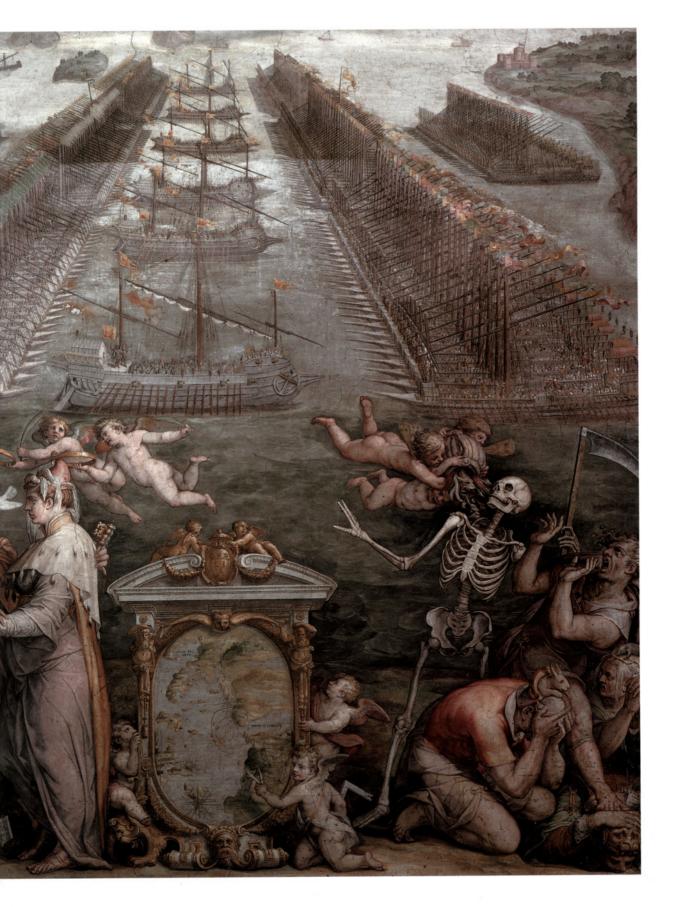
A seventeenth-century engraving of a Venetian squadron approaching the island of Tinos, a key position in the Central Aegean. It accurately suggests the symbiotic relationships among ports, seaside fortifications and galley fleets.

galley's technical experts: sailing master, pilot, boatswains, gunners, caulker, carpenter, cooper, rowing master, master-at-arms (significantly, in charge of water distribution), barber-surgeon, chaplain and able seamen; but they were more than that, for they were primary combatants as well. Such men were never numerous, for the Mediterranean, unlike northern European waters, lacked the fisheries that were their natural breeding ground. They were *the* critical manpower requirement of galley warfare.

By 1560, Spanish ordinary galleys were ideally rowed four-by-four by 160 oarsmen and carried 30 to 40 oficiales and 50 soldiers, with additional oarsmen added for important undertakings. The numbers are hard to track because of the a scaloccio system's flexibility and because the demand for fighting men varied enormously according to circumstances, but they grew steadily. The figures for the galleys of Spain and of Gian Andrea Doria, wintering at Messina after Lepanto, are indicative. Ordinary Spanish galleys mustered 50 oficiales, 27 sailors, 35 soldiers and 200 oarsmen while Doria's ordinary galleys had 50 oficiales, 35 soldiers and 164 oarsmen. An entrepreneur close to home, Doria cut







A galley laid up in port, attributed to the school of Pierre Puget (1620-94), showing the increase in the size of ordinary galleys during their waning days. Venetian galleys much like the one depicted here fought in the final sea battles in which Mediterranean galleys played a significant role, during the 1645-69 War of Crete. Though still effective firing platforms for their heavy main centre-line guns, such vessels were costly to operate.

his manpower rolls to save money, confident that he could obtain oarsmen and hire seamen in the spring. By contrast, the Spanish were far from their sources of manpower and carefully conserved their oarsmen, laying in special stores of wine, rice, olive oil and 'medicine' – in fact, high-protein food – for those who fell sick. While I have confined myself to Spain and its Italian clients since better documentation survives, and while these data reflect peculiar circumstances, the problems they illustrate were universal.

The trireme alla sensile endured in the eastern Mediterranean – most Venetian and many Muslim galleys that fought at Lepanto were triremes alla sensile – but lantern galleys grew inexorably larger. Don Juan of Austria's Real at Lepanto had 30 banks and 6 men to an oar – no less than 360 oarsmen – and a fighting complement based on 300 Sardinian arquebusiers as well as over 100 gentlemen volunteers. The lantern galley of his Muslim opposite, Ali Pasha, was even bigger, with a fighting complement centred on 300 janissaries and 100 archers. Those of Sebastian Venier, Venice's Capitano Generale da Mar (Captain





General of the Sea), and Marc Antonio Colonna, the Pope's captain general, must have been nearly as large.

The increase in manning density had two causes: first, the increased weight of ordnance and, second, the reduced efficiency of the *a scaloccio* rowing system. The effects were straightforward: a sharp decrease in strategic radius of action, combined with a geometric increase in costs exacerbated by rising inflation, particularly in the West. Like the sabre-toothed tiger, the galley continued to dominate its environment and to grow larger and more powerful – in the seventeenth century ordinary galleys normally had twenty-six banks – but at the same time the numbers of galleys in commission steadily declined. Lepanto thus marked the galley fleet's apogee, technically as well as strategically.



LEPANTO, 1571

They sail in badly made vessels poorly furnished with artillery, but they fight with desperation.

Venetian characterization of the Turks, MATTHEO CIGOGNA, Il Primo Libro del Trattato Militare, 1567

The struggle for control of the Mediterranean that peaked at Lepanto is traditionally dismissed by historians as peripheral. It produced, after all, only minor transfers of territory: a few coastal presidios, the islands of Rhodes, Chios and Cyprus, and border adjustments in coastal Dalmatia. Moreover, the principal actors in the drama, the Ottoman Empire, Spain and the Venetian Republic, were in decline by the time of the battle of Lepanto, or so it seems in retrospect. Contemporary declamations that Lepanto delivered Christendom from the Turk are dismissed as rhetorical flourish. A closer look suggests otherwise.

Lepanto was a product of the fusion of two naval struggles: the first between the Ottomans and Venice for control of the north-eastern Mediterranean and the second Spain's extension of the *Reconquista* (reconquest) into North Africa, a strategic impulse that found its counterpart in the Ottoman commitment to the expansion of the *Darülislam*, the abode of those who submit to the will of Allah. The overall contest interacted with, and was shaped by, three regional conflicts: the wars of Italy, the intermittent struggle between Spain and France for Italian hegemony between 1494 and 1559; that between the Ottomans and the Egyptian Mamelukes; and Ottoman expansion into the Balkans.

The wars of Italy ended in 1559 when the Treaty of Câteau-Cambrésis confirmed Spain's claim to Italian hegemony. Their main effect on the Mediterranean struggle was the diversion of Spanish resources; indeed, from the 1520s, French kings and Ottoman sultans co-ordinated their efforts with precisely that in mind. The same point applies to Ottoman expansion in the Balkans, though the diversion of resources cut both ways from 1519 when Charles I of Spain was elected Holy Roman Emperor, ruling the Habsburg domains in Germany, the Netherlands, Spain and the Americas as Emperor Charles V. The Ottoman thrust into the Balkans ended in stalemate, with Süleyman I's repulse from Vienna in 1529, although that was not apparent until long afterwards. The Ottoman–Mameluke conflict ended very differently, with Ottoman victory in 1517 placing Egypt's immense agricultural wealth at the Turks' disposal and giving the Ottomans control of the eastern termini of the Mediterranean spice trade.

The Mediterranean was not the only arena in which Spain, the Ottomans and Venice engaged. In the first decades of the sixteenth century, Spain carved out a rich empire in the New World, unleashing first a trickle, and then a torrent, of gold and, above all, silver, that loomed large in the strategic balance by multiplying Spain's military might – and unleashing the ravages of inflation. The Ottomans opposed the Portuguese in the Indian Ocean and Persian Gulf, with



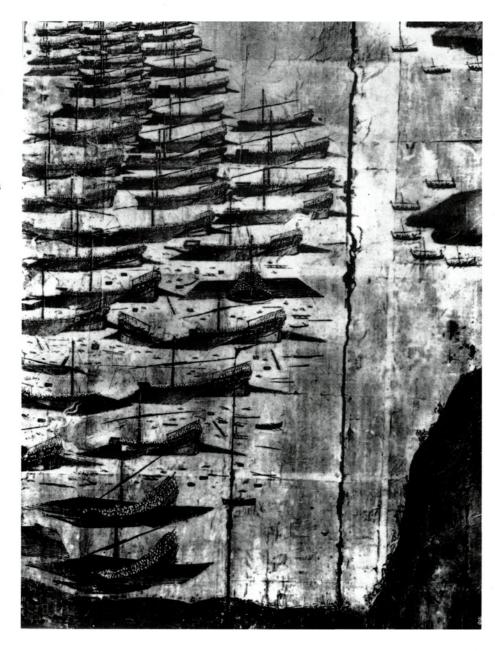
Khaireddin Barbarossa in a 1540 portrait. Born on Mitylene, Barbarossa and his elder brother Uruj fled west to escape the turmoil of the Ottoman succession struggle that put Sultan Bayezid II on the throne. He inherited the mantle of leadership when Uruj was killed in 1518 and became a champion of North African Muslims resisting Spanish expansion. Perhaps the finest naval commander of his day, he is shown here in old age, the red beard from which he got his name having turned white.

tacit Venetian backing. They also kept a wary eye on the Persian Safavids, mounting imperial campaigns to the east in 1514, 1534–5 and 1554–5.

For Spain, however, as long as the Turkish threat was real, the Mediterranean was the strategic linchpin, the axis around which all else pivoted. When Charles V received the Inca emperor Atahualpa's ransom of gold, he spent it not on the Danube to defend Austria, but to finance the conquest of Tunis. Even after the Netherlands erupted in open revolt, the Mediterranean retained its priority. The absence of mutinies in the Mediterranean provides strong, if indirect, evidence. As important as Flanders was to Philip II of Spain, his soldiers there were habitually unpaid, which inevitably led to mutiny. That did not occur in the Mediterranean, however, and not because of economic surplus as Spanish bankruptcies in 1557, 1560 and 1575 attest.

The first tentative step towards generalizing the Mediterranean struggle came in 1495, when Sultan Bayezid II dispatched the corsair Kemal Re'is to western North Africa, where he made contact with sea ghazis, raiders for the faith, who had made common cause with expelled Iberian Muslims thirsting for revenge and were inclined to take seriously the Ottoman sultans' legitimacy as protectors of the faith. In the following decades, these ghazis struggled to establish themselves in the face of repeated Spanish offensives aimed at stopping their raids by controlling their ports, either by occupation or through fortifications erected at their mouths. By 1520 the most successful among them, Khaireddin Barbarossa, had seized Algiers – although the Peñon, the fortress controlling the harbour, remained in Spanish hands – and had formally accepted Ottoman overlordship. In 1529, using

A contemporary engraving of a late sixteenth-century galley fight. It conveys an accurate impression of the slow pace of galley warfare, of the incredible human congestion, and of the carnage. Unusually, the artist has recorded the debris of battle and the small fustas and bergantines that transferred reinforcements from ship to ship and carried dispatches and orders.



a siege train provided by Francis I of France, Barbarossa took the Peñon, a counterpoint to his imperial master's repulse before Vienna in the same year. Meanwhile, in 1528 the great Genoese naval condottiero Andrea Doria transferred his allegiance from France to Spain, becoming Charles V's Captain General at Sea. Doria's switch secured Habsburg communications in the western Mediterranean and helped force France to seek peace with Spain in the following year.

Charles launched Doria on a series of raids against the North African coasts and in 1530 installed the Knights of St John, homeless since their expulsion from Rhodes, in Malta and Tripoli. In 1532, Doria took Coron. Süleyman responded by summoning Barbarossa to Constantinople in 1533 and appointing him Kapudan Pasha, naval commander-in-chief. Barbarossa recaptured Coron the

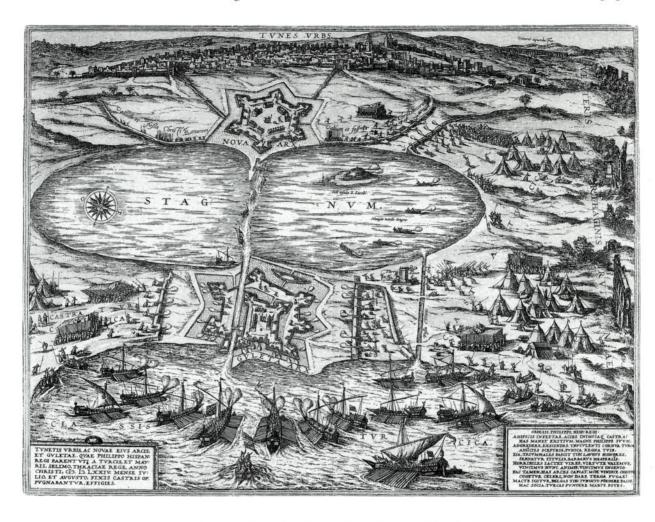
Sultan Süleyman I
interviewing Kapudan
Pasha Barbarossa in an
Ottoman miniature done
just over a decade after the
great admiral's death.



next year, but Charles led a massive expedition to Tunis in 1535, taking the city in a brilliant campaign. The Ottoman response was not long in coming. Having secured his eastern flank by taking Baghdad in 1534, Süleyman entered into a secret agreement with Francis I of France to mount a co-ordinated invasion of Italy in 1537.

The Turks deemed control of Corfu essential to an invasion of Italy, for a powerful squadron there could control the Straits of Otranto. That meant war

with Venice. Spain and the Pope came to the republic's aid, forming a loose alliance. By May 1537, Süleyman and the imperial army were in Avlona, opposite Corfu. Although eight thousand cavalry were taken across to raid Apulia in anticipation of a major invasion, Süleyman's plans came up against hard reality: Italian engineers had learned well at the hands of French and Ottoman siege guns



Tunis, shown here under siege in 1574. Taken for Christendom by Charles V in 1535, Tunis was captured by Uluj Ali's forces in 1569, then taken for Spain by Don Juan of Austria in 1573. Uluj Ali's reconquest in 1574 placed the city permanently in Muslim hands.

in the preceding decades, and Corfu was defended by up-to-date *trace italienne* fortifications. From 18 August to 6 September the Turks hurled themselves against them to no effect and, threatened with being cut off from their bases by converging allied squadrons, withdrew.

The economic logic of Ottoman mobilization, based on an elaborate system of decentralized taxes in kind, militated against campaigns by the imperial army in successive years since the *sipahi* horse archers, who constituted its core, needed time to attend to the land holdings that supported them. Süleyman's army thus stayed at home in 1538, leaving hostilities to the fleets. The Venetians were first out, threatening Ottoman bases along the Dalmatian coast. Knowing that he would be outnumbered, Barbarossa came west, taking shelter in the Gulf of Prevesa. Doria, the alliance's captain general, did not reach the Adriatic until



Portrait of Andrea Doria by Sebastiano del Piombo. Wealthy merchant, naval condottiero, Genoese patriot and shrewd politician, Doria was Genoa's de facto leader for much of his life. His defeat by Barbarossa at Prevesa in 1538 notwithstanding, he was one of the most skilled naval commanders of his age.

September 1538 and stopped at Corfu, where the allied fleet lay plagued by internal dissension, with the Venetians clamouring for aggressive action. The Pope's captain general, Marco Grimani, took the initiative, landing troops and guns in an attempt to seize the Ottoman batteries guarding the narrow entrance to the gulf and to bottle Barbarossa up inside. That brought Doria south.

The odds favoured the Christians, with 130 galleys and a fleet of supporting sailing ships to Barbarossa's 90 galleys and 50 galiots, but the appearance of Ottoman land forces in strength forced Grimani to withdraw. That left the Christian galleys off a hostile shore, expending energy, provisions and water.

It was late in the season, and the threat of storms was real; on 27 September Doria ordered withdrawal under cover of darkness. The wind failed during the night and dawn found the Christian fleet scattered, much of it within reach of Barbarossa's galleys, which promptly sallied forth. Tactically, the battle of Prevesa was little more than a skirmish. The Christians lost a handful of galleys and round ships. The most notable episode was the successful resistance of a Venetian galleon.

Strategically, however, Prevesa was decisive. Furious at what they considered to be Doria's indecision – even treason, for he was believed to have been negotiating with Barbarossa – and with their commercial lifeline cut, the Venetians concluded a separate peace in 1540, leaving the Turks supreme in the Levant and free to campaign westwards. This notwithstanding, Charles struck next, attacking Algiers in 1541. He achieved strategic surprise by sailing late in the campaigning season, but his boldness was rewarded with disaster when his fleet was smashed by a great storm on 24–26 October. Half a world away, an equally bold Portuguese attack on Suez miscarried in the same year.

France re-entered the Italian wars the next year, and Barbarossa raided Calabria in 1543, wintering in Toulon. It was the high point of Ottoman–French naval co-operation. Then, after helping the French to take Nice, Barbarossa declined to assist in a proposed siege of Genoa. France left the war in 1544 and Süleyman focused his attention on Persia and Hungary. The crisis had passed.

Nevertheless, the Turks had the upper hand. During the 1550s Turkish

An idealized representation of the battle of Prevesa by Bernardino Poccetti (c. 1542–1612). At Prevesa, Barbarossa's shrewd tactics gained him a signal victory that split the Christian alliance and gave Turkish galley fleets access to the western Mediterranean for a generation.



squadrons raided the Balearics and Malta and expelled the Knights of St John from Tripoli. French-Ottoman naval co-operation from 1552-54 and from 1557-58 added to Spain's woes. Worn out by the struggle, Charles abdicated in favour of his son, Philip in 1556. Then, with the French threat lifted by the Treaty of Câteau-Cambrésis, Spain took the offensive. Doria's great-nephew and heir, Gian Andrea Doria, then aged only 20, was at sea early in 1560, with 54 galleys, 5 galiots, 29 sailing ships and 35 miscellaneous small craft carrying an army of five thousand. Aiming for Tripoli, Doria vacillated and attacked the corsair island base of Djerba, off the Tunisian coast. News of his expedition reached Constantinople, and Piali Pasha, Kapudan Pasha following Barbarossa's death in 1546, sortied in early March. His force swelled to 86 galleys by North African reinforcements, Piali Pasha caught Doria in disarray on 11 May and inflicted a crushing defeat, capturing or sinking 28 to 30 galleys, half of the sailing ships and nearly all of the smaller craft. That represented a large proportion of Habsburg naval power - the galleys of Sicily were nearly wiped out and the Papal fleet crippled for years to come – but the real loss was in skilled manpower: some 600 oficiales were lost, along with 2,400 sailor-arguebusiers. Few in number, and the products of a lifetime of experience, the oficiales were irreplaceable in the short term and the latter could not be replaced at all.

Forced to embark regular infantry to replace the sailor-arquebusiers, and with inexperienced oficiales, Spanish galleys suffered a series of disasters in subsequent years, and when the Ottomans concluded a truce with the Austrian Habsburgs in 1563 they found Spain vulnerable in the Mediterranean. Spanish officials, notably Don Garcia de Toledo, Philip II's Viceroy of Sicily and Captain General at Sea, accurately predicted that the Turks would strike in force in 1565. Don Garcia also anticipated the target: Malta, with an excellent harbour well placed to support Turkish operations against Italy or even Spain itself. The Knights of St John were well fortified and could be relied upon to mount a stout defence, but thick walls and determination alone could not offset Turkish superiority at sea. That superiority was manifested in early May when a fleet of 130 galleys, 54 galiots, 8 maonas (great galleys used as transports) and 11 large sailing vessels under Piali Pasha arrived off Malta, transporting a powerful siege train and an army of 30,000 men, for which the galleys' oarsmen and fighting complements were reserves. Against this, the Knights of St John could muster only 2,500 professional fighting men including 500 Knights plus 1,000 armed Maltese.

Unable to confront the Muslims at sea, Don Garcia reinforced the island's garrison and, after a particularly dangerous assault in early July, sent in four picked galleys with a relief force of 700 infantry and 40 Knights. The siege lasted into September and was resolved when enormous casualties among the janissaries, *sipahis* and oarsmen left Piali Pasha's fleet wasted, enabling Don Garcia to throw in a relief of 11,000 infantry and 200 Knights carried in 28 galleys. The Knights vilified him for excessive caution, but Don Garcia's skill in playing a weak hand had saved Malta. Of equal importance, Spain's galley

A contemporary depiction of the 1565 siege of Malta. One of the hardest-fought and most closely contested sieges in history, it was a vital defensive victory for Christendom.

squadrons were allowed to complete their post-Djerba recovery, rebuilding their corps of oficiales.

Large galley fleets were mobilized in the ensuing years, but to little effect, for both sides understood the strategic and tactical calculation. A galley fleet's strategic potential lay in its ability to seize forward bases, yet that was becoming increasingly expensive, all the more so as a numerically inferior but well-handled galley force could effectively support the place under attack. For the Turks the effectiveness of the Habsburg armies, with their hard core of Spanish infantry,



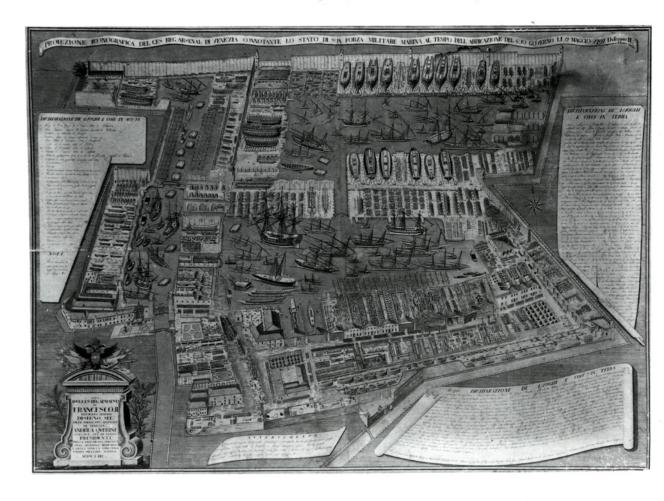
ruled out objectives in Sicily or Italy. Finally, as galley fleets grew larger, their strategic radius of action diminished. The Spanish refused to chance a fleet encounter with inferior numbers, and the result was a stand-off. The Ottoman seizure of Chios, Genoa's last possession in the eastern Mediterranean, in 1566 was unopposed.

After Süleyman's death on campaign in Hungary in 1566, offensive action in the Balkans ceased and his successor, Selim II, 'The Sot', turned to the sea, perhaps as part of a grander design, for the sultans of Aceh, aided and abetted by



Selim II, 'The Sot,' in a sixteenth-century painting from the Top Kapi Museum. In their youth, Ottoman princes were trained in a craft as part of their imperial education. Selim's was that of a bow-maker, hence the bow in his hand.

the Ottomans, were becoming a serious threat to the Portuguese in the east, attacking Malacca both in 1568 and in 1571–5. Frustrated at Malta, the Turks chose a target closer to hand: the rich Venetian island of Cyprus, hard up against the coast of Asia Minor, no doubt reasoning that its proximity to their bases would offset Venetian strength at sea. Rejecting an ultimatum to cede Cyprus, Venice approached Spain and the Pope for help, and swiftly commissioned between 120 and 130 galleys, the majority laid up in the Arsenal, a remarkable



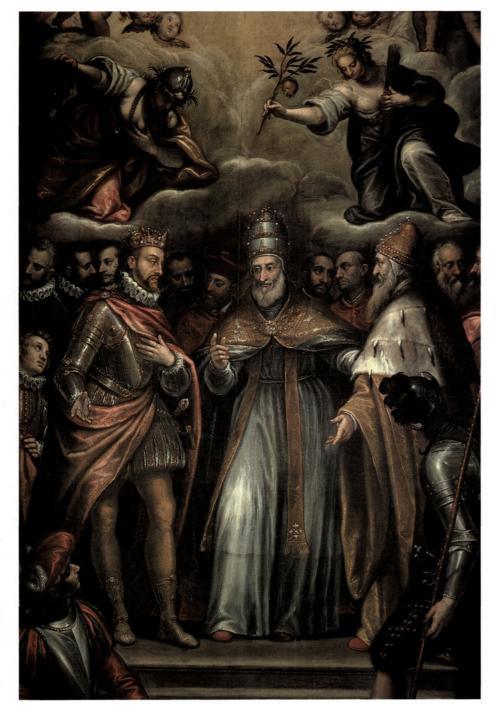
Depicting the Venetian Arsenal near the end of its long existence, this engraving gives an idea of the scale and scope of activities carried on within its precincts. In addition to being a major shipyard and cannon foundry, the Arsenal stored the Republic's reserve galleys in time of peace.

achievement. Also in the Arsenal were ten merchant galleys – *galee grosse* – that had been laid up when rising salaries rendered them unprofitable. Chronically short of manpower, Venice possessed a surfeit of first-rate ordnance and these merchant galleys were converted into galleasses, with batteries of heavy guns.

The ensuing campaign was a fiasco for Christendom. Supported by 150 to 160 galleys under Piali Pasha, the Turks invaded Cyprus in July and quickly overran the island. Sickness among his crews forestalled an early counterstroke by Girolamo Zane, the Venetian Capitano Generale da Mar, and the Spanish and Papal contingents, under Doria and Marc Antonio Colonna, reached the Levant only in late August. The allies now had 180 to 190 galleys, but internecine squabbling reduced the force to impotence. The capital of Cyprus, Nicosia, fell in

September, leaving the port of Famagusta the only remaining Venetian position. The only bright spot was a brilliant Venetian relief of Famagusta in January which resulted in Piali Pasha's dismissal as Kapudan Pasha.

Thoroughly alarmed, in May 1571 Spain, Venice and the Pope consummated the Holy League, a much tighter alliance than that of 1538. They agreed to maintain 200 galleys, 100 sailing vessels, 50,000 infantry and 4,500 cavalry for three years, the costs being borne by Spain, Venice and the Pope in a ratio



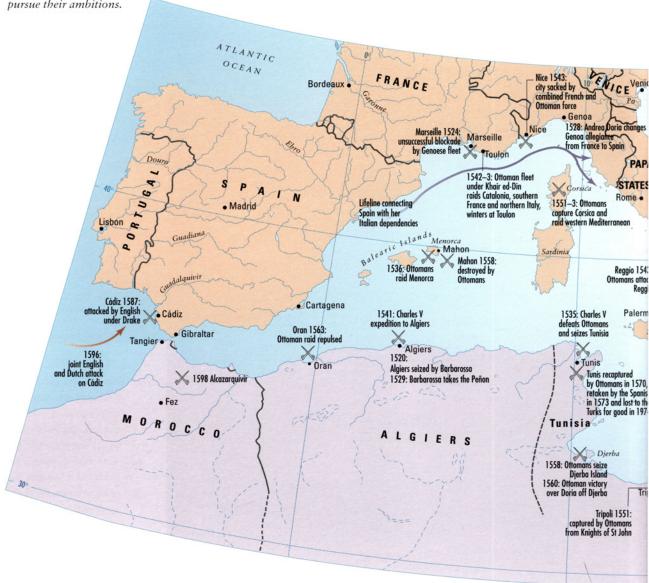
An allegorical depiction of the formal ratification in May 1571 of the Holy League of Spain, the Papal States, and Venice, showing Philip II of Spain, Doge Alvise Mocenigo of Venice, and Pope Pius V. In fact, the provisions of the alliance were hammered out in Rome by diplomats representing their respective powers and the three never met face to face.

Mediterranean Battles, 1500–1600

The struggle for control of the Mediterranean began in earnest around 1500 and expanded in scale and geographic extent as the main centre-line bow gun-armed war galley matured as an effective weapons system. The concurrent consolidation of the Habsburg and Ottoman resource bases gave the principal contenders the means to pursue their ambitions.

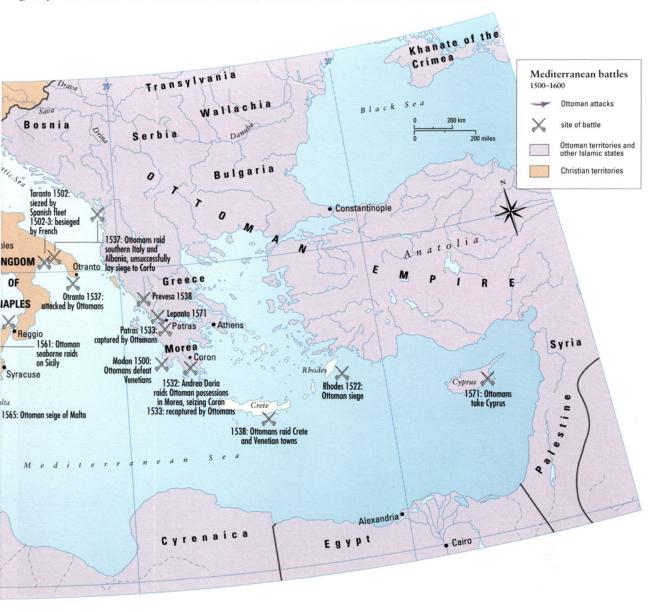
of 3:2:1. The allied fleet would have a single commander-in-chief, and since Spain paid the most, the appointment was Philip II's, who named his 24-year-old bastard half-brother, Don Juan of Austria.

In 1571 both sides mobilized on an unprecedented scale, a lengthy process. Complicating matters for the allies, Don Juan was engaged until July in suppressing a major Morisco revolt in southern Spain. Colonna with 12 Papal galleys arrived at the agreed rendezvous of Messina on 20 July, shortly followed by 58 Venetian galleys and 6 galleasses under Sebastian Venier, the new Venetian Capitano Generale da Mar, Zane having been imprisoned after the previous year's débâcle. Don Juan reached Messina with 24 galleys on 23 August, followed a week later by 60 Venetian galleys from Crete. That gave Don Juan about 190 galleys and 6 galleasses, not counting galiots, *fustas* and sailing vessels carrying soldiers and supplies. Christian strength grew as additional galleys trickled in.



Meanwhile the Ottoman fleet under its new Kapudan Pasha, Müezzenzade Ali Pasha, had worked its way around the Morea (Peloponnese), penetrating as far north as Prevesa. Forty North African galleys and galiots under Uluj Ali Pasha, heir to Barbarossa and one of the most skilled galley commanders of the age, brought the Muslim fleet up to a final strength of some 230 galleys and 70 galiots.

In the meantime, Don Juan confronted daunting challenges. Deep-seated enmities existed between his various contingents, exacerbated by imbalances in their respective capabilities. Venetian—Genoese distrust, particularly Venetian distrust of Doria, ran deep, and the matter was complicated by the Venetian manpower shortage. Colonna, Don Juan's second-in-command, proved effective in smoothing over the differences, but the problems went beyond simple distrust. The Venetians arrived at Messina with only thirty *scapoli*, fighting men, per galley, far below the minimum of one hundred that western commanders



The commanders of the fleet of the Holy League at Lepanto in a near-contemporary painting: from left, Don Juan of Austria, Captain General of the League; Marc Antonio Colonna, Papal Captain General and second in command; and Sebastian Venier, Venetian Capitano Generale da Mar.

considered necessary for a stand-up fight. Don Juan therefore proposed that the Venetians embark Italian, Spanish and German infantry to make good the deficiency. Venier rejected the Germans out of hand, but, pressed by Colonna, accepted the Italians and Spaniards. Spanish infantry and Venetian *scapoli* were a combustible mix, and fights escalated into mutinies. Venier had a Spanish captain hanged, and until cooler heads prevailed the alliance was in jeopardy.

One of Don Juan's earliest and most successful decisions was to intermingle the Holy League's galleys, leaving no contingent intact under its own commander. That this unprecedented arrangement was accepted is elegant testimony to the urgency of the situation. Don Juan then divided the fleet into a centre, two wings and a reserve, commanding the centre personally. Doria commanded the right wing; Agostin Barbarigo, the Venetian second-incommand, the left; and Don Álvaro de Bazán the reserve.

The Christians left Messina on 16 September 1571. On 26 September, they



reached Corfu, where they heard of the fall of Famagusta. Meanwhile Ali Pasha had gone south, sheltering at Lepanto. The Christians followed him four days later with an advance guard drawn from the right and reserve, followed by the right, centre and left, pausing between Cephalonia and Ithaca on 5–6 October to replenish and take on water. Both commanders-in-chief had good intelligence, but each underestimated his adversary's strength. Both determined to seek battle; indeed, Ali Pasha was under explicit orders from his sultan to do so.

Thus it was when the Christian advance guard, entering the Gulf of Patras shortly after dawn on 7 October, sighted the Muslim fleet off to the east. The strengths of the opposing forces given in the table below do not reflect late arrivals and are thus low, particularly for the Christians, who gained as many as seventeen galleys. Putting the numbers in perspective, Fernand Braudel, the great French historian of the Mediterranean, has estimated that a total of 500 to 600 galleys were operating in the Mediterranean at the time of Lepanto. If that was the case,

Christians			Muslims		
Squadron	Commander	Strength	Squadron	Commander	Strength
Left	Barbarigo	53 galleys	Right	Mehmet Suluk	60 galleys
		2 galleases			2 galiots
Centre	Don Juan	62 galleys	Centre	Ali Pasha	First line: 62 galleys
		2 galleases			Second line: 25 galley:
					8 galiots
			Reserve		8 galleys
					22 galiots
					64 fustas
Right	Doria	53 galleys	Left	Uluj Ali Pasha	61 galleys
		2 galleases		i i	32 galiots
Reserve	Bazán	38 galleys			

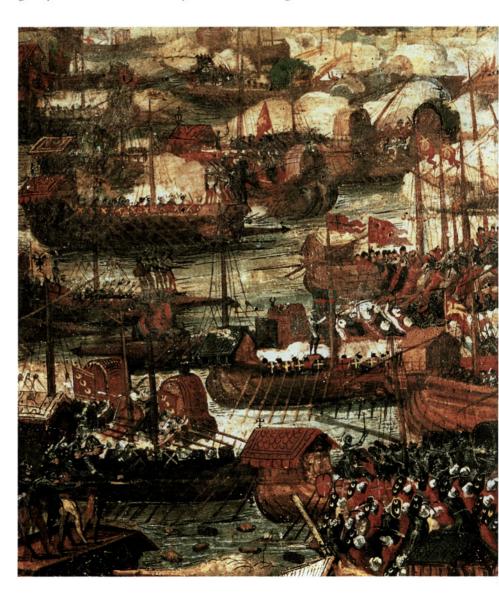
and Braudel's estimate is credible, then somewhere between 70 and 90 per cent of all Mediterranean war galleys in existence met at Lepanto, clear evidence that the principal actors believed the stakes to be very high indeed. Reinforcing the point, Venice retained only fourteen galleys and two galleasses in the upper Adriatic.

The opposing orders of battle seemingly mirrored one another, but were based on very different premises. The Christian left wing was overwhelmingly Venetian, evidence of Don Juan's concern that the Muslims might turn his inshore flank and precipitate a mêlée, with fatal consequences for his less manoeuvrable galleys. The Venetian galleys' speed under oars was his best counter, and so he put them there, under a Venetian commander, who posted himself on his extreme inshore flank, a decidedly unconventional position. Moreover, Don Juan assigned only three of his twenty-five lantern galleys to the left, where speed would count more than power.

For his part, Ali Pasha knew that the greater height and firepower of the Christian galleys, particularly those of Spain and her Italian clients, would grind him down in a head-on fight. He therefore planned to turn the Christian flanks, by better knowledge of the soundings on his right and – he hoped – by Uluj Ali Pasha's tactical magic on his left. Personally commanding his centre, he would counter Christian superiority head-on by feeding in reinforcements from his second line and reserve, holding on long enough for his wings to bring victory. It nearly worked.

Don Juan staked all on the ability of his squadrons to maintain line abreast, reinforced by *fustas* and *bergantines* shuttling men to threatened segments of the line. Leading from the centre, and correctly anticipating that Ali Pasha would do the same, he posted the galley of Don Luis de Requesens, Comendador Major of Castile, at his stern to provide reinforcements and Venier's and Colonna's lantern galleys on his flanks. Finally, he ordered the galleasses to be towed in front of

A contemporary artist's view of Lepanto from the State Archives of Siena. The artist has done a commendable job of showing the confusion of battle.



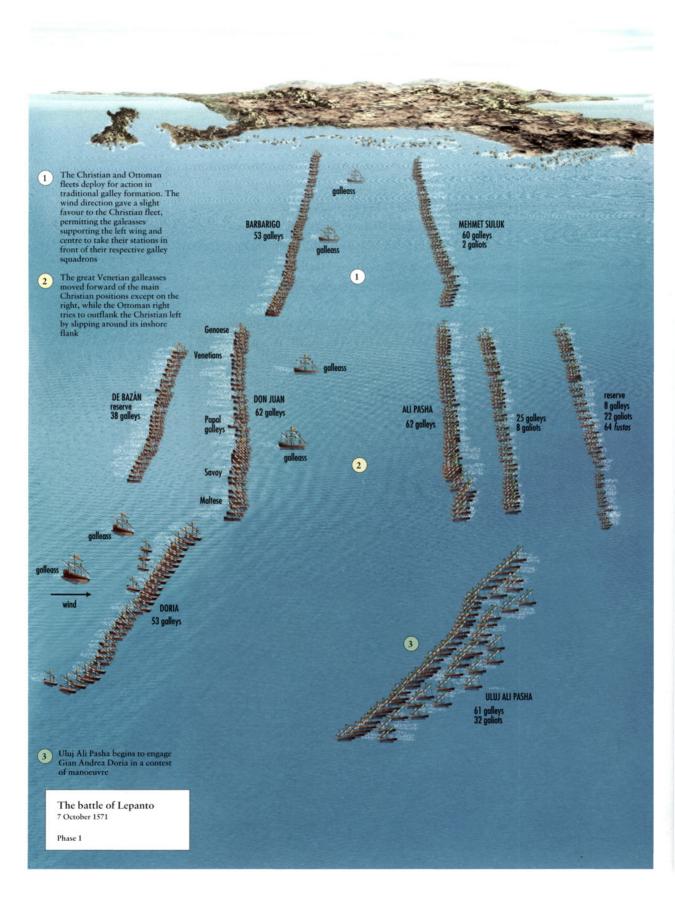
their respective squadrons. Those on the left and centre made it before the initial clash; those on the right, with a greater distance to travel, did not. As the fleets closed, Don Juan ordered the spurs of the Christian galleys to be cut off, so that their main centre-line guns could be depressed to bear at the shortest possible range for maximum effect. In giving the order he confirmed implicitly that – at least in the centre – he had precipitated the head-on clash in line abreast that he wanted. Unlike Ali Pasha, he did not need to pre-commit his reserve. Employed independently, it would be his final safeguard against the mêlée that the Muslims desperately needed.

The inshore squadrons engaged at around noon, the Muslim galleys parting ranks to bypass the galleasses, which punished them with their heavy guns as they passed. Mehmet Suluk broke for the shallows to slip between Barbarigo's left and the shore to precipitate a mêlée. He made it with four or five galleys and the battle hung by a thread. Eight Venetian galleys were sunk, and Barbarigo was

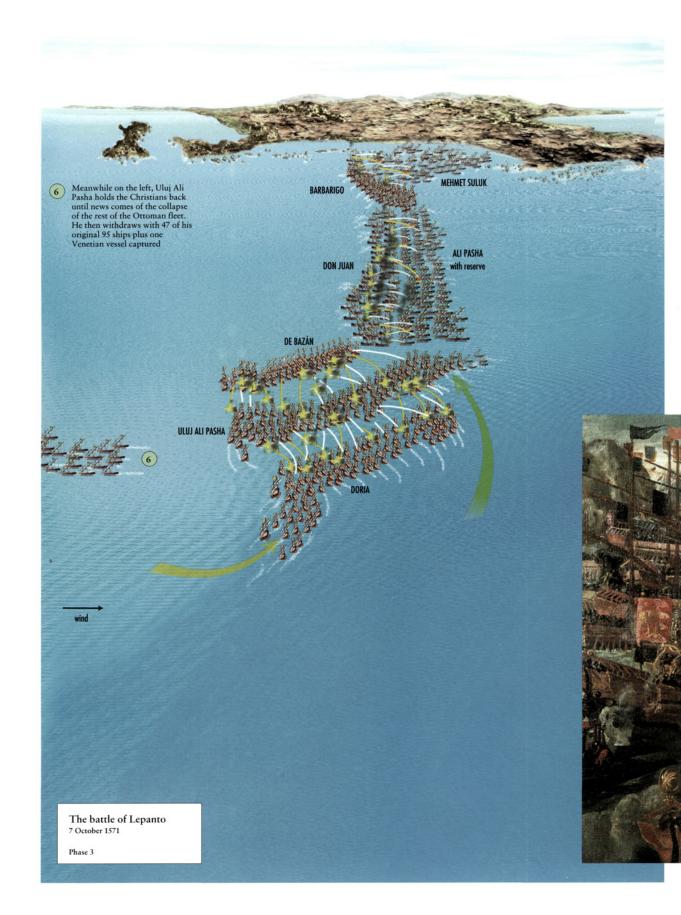


THE BATTLE OF LEPANTO

The maps on the following pages can only hint at the chaos with which the opposing commanders had to deal. Their eye level was only 12-15 feet above the water, and although masthead lookouts could see farther, little would have been visible through the gunpowder smoke once battle was joined. The fustas and bergantines, used to pass orders and information, transfer reinforcements, and protect galleys against attack from the rear, were omitted for clarity. A large number of these vessels were present, particularly on the Christian side.







felled by an arrow to the eye, but first he pivoted his squadron 'like a door', bringing his right forward on line to confront the Turks. His galleasses worked their way back into the fray to deliver the *coup de grâce*. Christian losses were heavy, but the Muslim right was driven against the shore and eliminated.

The centres met at about 12.30 p.m. The Muslims took their quota of punishment passing the galleasses, reformed and then came on. By all accounts, the initial clash was awe-inspiring, firepower pitted against speed and raw muscle, with Muslim galleys penetrating the Christian ranks by as much as a ship's length. The fight was particularly fierce in the centre, where Ali Pasha's *Sultana* forced itself between Don Juan's *Real* and Venier's lantern galley, and smaller Muslim craft sought to force gaps in the Christian line. Twice, boarding parties from the *Real* drove the *Sultana*'s defenders back as far as the mainmast; twice they were repelled by reinforcements from the reserve. Finally, on the third attempt, supported by fire from Venier's galley and bolstered by reinforcements, Don Juan's men succeeded. Ali Pasha was felled by a musket ball, and, as the news of his death spread, Muslim cohesion faltered.

Meanwhile, Uluj Ali Pasha had manoeuvred as if to turn Doria's right, and Doria responded accordingly, moving seawards. Frustrated by the inconclusive

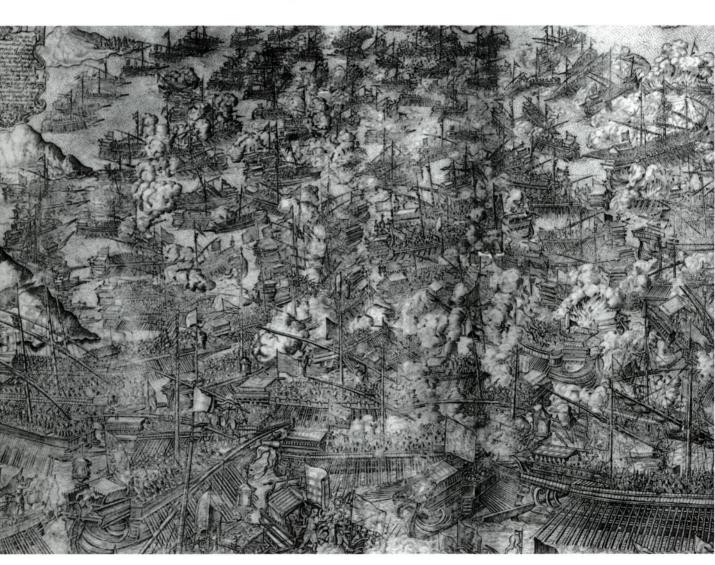
A detail from a contemporary painting of Lepanto by Paolo Veronese (1528–88) accurately conveys the intensely close nature of combat and the dense press of bodies aboard the galleys.



An engraving of Lepanto from the Museo Correr, Venice, showing the climactic final stages of the battle. The ships are particularly well drawn; note the size difference between the ordinary galleys and galleasses. This depiction is unusual in including significant amounts of smoke.

manoeuvring, fifteen of Doria's Venetian galleys, their captains perhaps doubting Doria's intentions, broke formation and headed for the centre. Uluj Ali was closer and shot the gap. He piled into Don Juan's right flank, gobbling up most of the fifteen ill-disciplined galleys en route, engaging Doria's left-hand galleass and the galleys that were towing it into action, and capturing the *Capitanas* (flagship) of Malta and Savoy. It was a close-run thing. Had Bazán not kept the bulk of the Christian reserve uncommitted, Uluj Ali might have pulled victory from the ashes of defeat. As it was, Bazán met the assault head on, while Doria and his second galleass came up belatedly and engaged the rearmost Muslim galleys and galiots in a vicious fight. Seeing the tell-tale signs of defeat in the centre, and no doubt having learned of Ali Pasha's death, Uluj Ali threw in the towel, abandoned his prizes and fought his way clear with thirty galleys, the only sizeable Muslim contingent to escape.

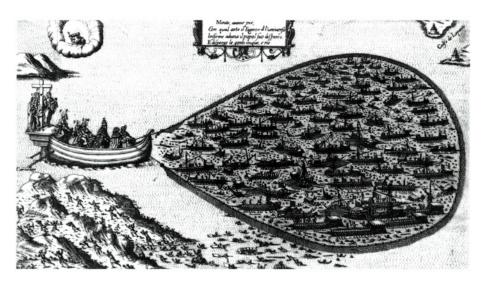
Muslim losses were staggering: 200 galleys, with all of their ordnance, over 30,000 killed and wounded, 15,000 galley slaves freed and 3,000 prisoners as



opposed to Christian losses of 10 galleys, 7,500 killed and 20,000 wounded. Most importantly, at least 4,000 Muslim experts, technical specialists and skilled mariners – oficiales – were lost, along with the corps of naval archers. The loss of 600 oficiales and 2,400 sailor-arquebusiers at Djerba had hamstrung Spain's galley forces for half a decade, but this was far worse, both proportionately and in absolute terms.

The Ottoman Grand Vizier Sokullu Mehmet Pasha, is said to have reacted to defeat by saying, 'The Christians have singed my beard [meaning the fleet], but I have lopped off an arm. My beard will grow back. The arm [meaning Cyprus], will not'. Either Sokullu Mehmet Pasha was ill-informed on naval matters, which seems unlikely, or he was dissembling, for, as the Spanish learned after Djerba, such beards grew slowly. The Venetian Council of Ten took measures to ensure that it would not grow at all: in June 1572, they polled their prisoners to identify the experts and had them killed. In December the Venetian ambassador to Madrid requested a secret audience with Philip II to inform him of this and to ask





that he do the same. Philip responded that he had already given Don Juan the appropriate orders.

In 1572 Uluj Ali, now Kapudan Pasha, put to sea at the head of a fleet of over 200 galleys, a remarkable achievement although the galleys were hastily built of green wood and their crews were inexperienced. Fearing an outbreak of religious war in France, Philip delayed Don Juan in Spanish waters. By the time he reached the Adriatic in September, Colonna had already sortied, acting in his capacity as second-in-command and encouraged by the new Venetian Capitano Generale da Mar, Giacomo Foscarini (Venier having been

An allegorical engraving celebrating Christian victory at Lepanto. The Pope, with his Spanish and Venetian helpers, is shown pulling in the netted and doomed Muslim fleet.

sidelined to eliminate friction with Don Juan). Catching Uluj Ali off Cerigo on 7 August, Colonna and Foscarini formed line and had their galleasses and armed supply ships towed to the front. Uluj Ali formed line to oppose them. The allies would not engage without the galleasses, while Uluj Ali declined to engage at all.

The two fleets squared off again on 10 August, Uluj Ali again managing to avoid a general engagement. After Don Juan's arrival with 55 galleys, the Christians tried again, finding Uluj Ali at Modon, where he had sought refuge by pulling his galleys ashore stern first, protected by shore batteries. The odds were heavily in the Christians' favour, 194 galleys and 8 galleasses (two of them Tuscan) as opposed to some 200 Muslim galleys, of which 70 or 80 may in fact have been galiots, their crews raw and depleted by sickness. There were signs of panic in the Muslim ranks, and a bold attack might have succeeded, but interallied friction had reappeared and Don Juan was reluctant to risk all on a single throw of the dice. The moment of opportunity passed. Distrusting her allies, and with her economic position worsening, Venice came to terms with the Turks the following April.

In 1573 Don Juan led 107 galleys and 30 sailing ships carrying 27,000 troops against Tunis, taking the place without resistance. The success was ephemeral, however. The next year, Uluj Ali, with breathtaking audacity, led 230 galleys and a fleet carrying an army of 40,000 to Tunis. He not only retook the city, but captured the harbour fortress of La Goletta that had been Spanish all along. To the Turks, his triumphal return to Constantinople must have seemed a miracle. The success was never repeated.

With the Turks contained and the situation in Flanders worsening, Philip reordered his priorities, scaling down his galley forces and sending Don Juan north in 1576 to take command against the Dutch. The North African *ghazis*, with a hard core of actively campaigning galleys, recovered from Lepanto and remained an active threat to Christian coasts and commerce. The Constantinople-based galley fleet did not. The corps of technical experts and skilled mariners that had been lost at Lepanto was never regenerated, and Western galleys, notably those of the Knights of St John, raided routinely in the Levant, cruising in waters that had hitherto been prohibitively dangerous.

Lepanto yielded seemingly modest strategic dividends, but we must consider the alternatives. As we have seen, victory hung on the narrowest of margins, and the very nature of galley warfare would surely have made any Muslim victory as lopsided as that which obtained. The main loss would have occurred in skilled Christian manpower and, in addition to *oficiales*, would have included the Venetian pool of free oarsmen (only sixteen Venetian galleys at Lepanto were rowed by convicts). With the Mediterranean devoid of expert Christian practitioners of galley warfare, Ali Pasha would have had a degree of operational freedom far greater than that enjoyed by Barbarossa after Prevesa. That the Christian leadership felt constrained to massacre the captured Turkish experts *after* their victory speaks volumes about the threat that these men represented.

Had the Muslims won, it is unlikely that Crete and Malta would have remained in Christian hands for long, and Venice itself would have been at grave risk. Links between North Africa and Constantinople would have been strengthened, the Balearics would have been open to invasion and Ottoman hopes of aiding the Spanish Moriscos would have been real. Perhaps most important though immeasurable, Muslim confidence would have soared, while that of Christendom plummeted.

The evidence thus indicates that Lepanto was indeed decisive, albeit defensively. Süleyman's repulse from Vienna in 1529 is widely regarded as a major turning point, and rightly so, but even had the Turks taken Vienna further advance would have been difficult without major institutional changes – moving the Ottoman capital to Vienna, perhaps – for by 1529 the Habsburg armies were quite capable of taking the Turks' measure in the field. No such constraints would have applied to a victorious Ottoman fleet after Lepanto.

Punta Delgada, 1582

The most famous naval battles these late years have afforded, were those of Lepanto against the Turks ... of the Spaniards against the French at the Terceira Islands, and betwixt the Armada of Spain and the English in 1588.

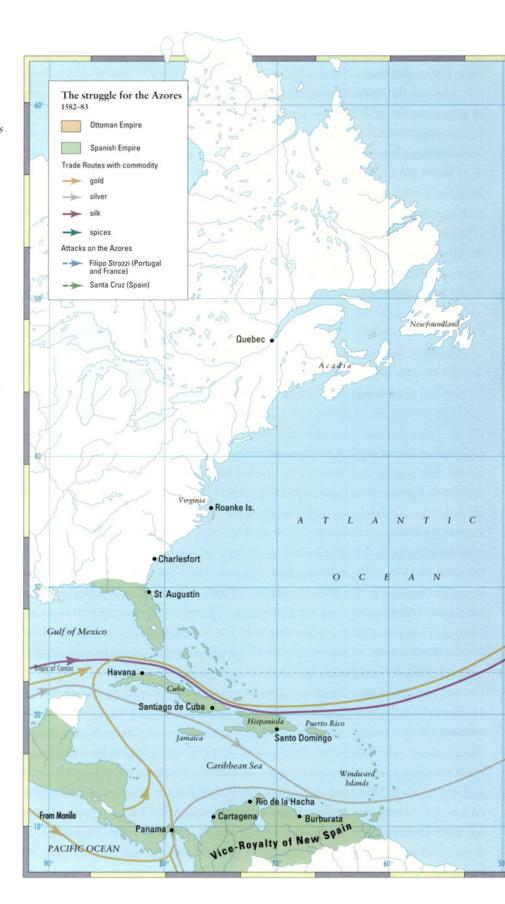
SIR WILLIAM MONSON, c. 1620

Although it might easily have been otherwise, the Ottoman–Habsburg struggle for Mediterranean dominance now trailed off into stalemate. Uluj Ali Pasha's capture of Tunis and La Goletta in 1574, although operationally brilliant, yielded modest strategic dividends. For its part, Spain commanded inadequate resources for major offensive action, but, in the absence of a significant threat, adopted an aggressive posture. Álvaro de Bazán's galleys ravaged the North African coast with impunity in 1576, showing that war could still cost the Turks. But as the threat diminished in the Mediterranean, Spain's difficulties in the Netherlands grew apace. At the same time, the Ottomans nervously eyed their eastern frontier, where 1577 began a thirteen-year war with the Safavids. That same year, Sultan Murad III concluded an armistice with Philip of Spain that would be periodically renewed until the negotiation of a definitive peace in 1587.

But Spain was not the only Catholic nation with crusading impulses and Mediterranean ambitions, and in 1578 the young Portuguese king, Sebastian, led an army into Morocco to overthrow the sharif, an Ottoman surrogate, and install his own client. The Moroccans were as well supplied with gunpowder weapons as the Portuguese and as skilled in their use, and won a crushing victory on 4 August at Alcazarquivir. Sebastian died in the battle, and his entire army, including the cream of the Portuguese nobility, was killed or captured. The Portuguese throne fell by default to Cardinal Henry, ageing and in ill health, the last legitimate descendant of the Avis line. These developments were noted with alacrity by Philip of Spain, who had a solid claim to the throne through his mother, a

THE STRUGGLE FOR THE AZORES, 1582-3

The map on the right highlights the strategic importance of the Azores as a stopping-over point and provisioning base for returning Spanish treasure fleets and Portuguese spice carracks. In hostile hands, the Azores would not only have deprived the Spanish and Portuguese of a vital place of refuge, but would have been perfect bases for corsairs. The routes of outbound Spanish and Portuguese vessels were further south to take advantage of prevailing winds and current patterns.





Portuguese princess. Henry died in February 1580, having spent much of Portugal's treasure to ransom *fidalgos*, members of the nobility captured at Alcazarquivir. Philip had used the intervening years to good advantage, discreetly negotiating his terms of succession with Henry, arriving at an arrangement that preserved Portugal's empire and governmental institutions and secured the acquiescence of the nobility and wealthy merchants.

There was, however, considerable anti-Spanish sentiment among the ordinary Portuguese, and Sebastian's illegitimate cousin, Dom Antonio, a wealthy friar, proclaimed himself king with considerable popular support. Philip responded by invading Portugal and dispatching envoys to Portugal's imperial possessions to press his case. The invasion had two arms: an army driving on Lisbon from the east through Estremadura, and a smaller force working its way along the southern coast with naval support. Philip again displayed his skill at selecting subordinates, assigning the main force to the Duke of Alba, ageing but still widely respected; the southern army to the Duke of Medina Sidonia; and naval command to Bazán, getting on in years but thoroughly competent. It was Philip's finest hour as commander-in-chief. Henry's expenditure for ransoms had left little for defence; the Spanish moved swiftly and, in Alba's case, with remarkable restraint. The Spanish forces united and, after a short, stiff fight – Alba's last battle, and perhaps his best – Lisbon surrendered on 18 July 1580. Dom Antonio fled north and on 23 October left the country aboard an English ship.

Philip's lieutenants had left Portuguese governance intact, and internal resistance evaporated. The Indies and Brazil accepted Spanish rule, the latter with some enthusiasm in the light of French designs on its trade. Of the Portuguese empire, only the Azores, excepting the island of São Miguel, held for Dom Antonio, a matter that quickly aroused interest in London and, of greater import, Paris. That interest was heightened when a small Spanish expedition that had been sent in 1581 to reclaim the islands was repulsed. This was a serious matter, for the Azores were vital to the operation of convoys from both the East and West Indies; the Flota de Tierra Firme, Flota de Nueva España and Carriera das Indias, the treasure and spice convoys, used them for watering and provisioning on their way home and as a rendezvous point for their escorts. They were a perfect base from which to prey on Habsburg commerce.

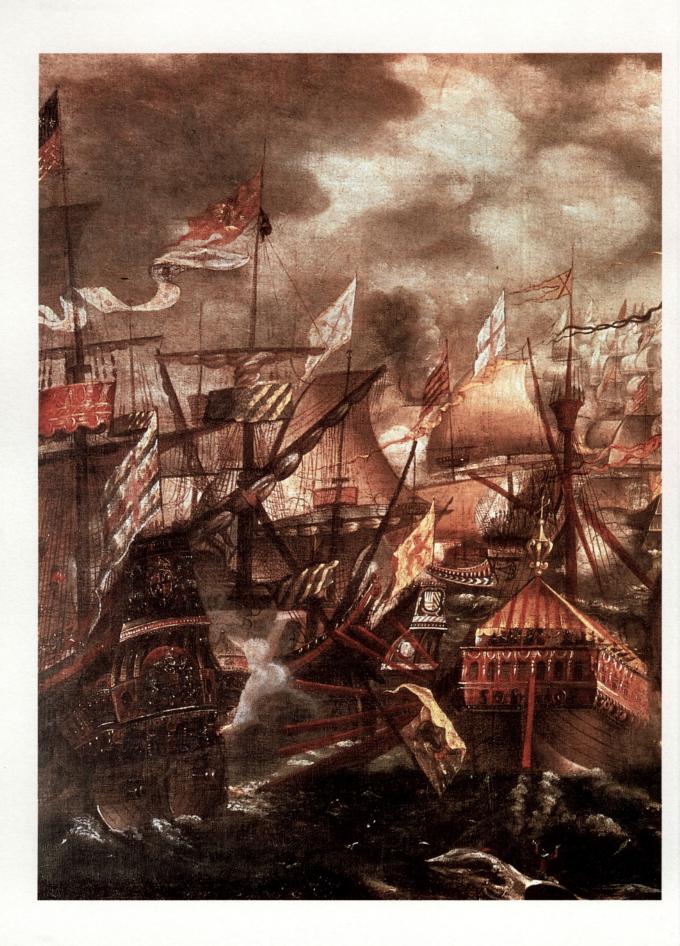
Sensing opportunity, Catherine de Medici, dowager queen of France, resolved to support Dom Antonio's claim and, in the spring of 1582, dispatched an expeditionary force under Philip Strozzi of some 60 ships, half of them large, carrying 6–7,000 soldiers, the largest French maritime expedition until the age of Louis XIV. Sailing with the implicit blessing of Queen Elizabeth, it included several English ships. Alive to the danger, Philip dispatched a fleet under Bazán. Consisting of 2 large Portuguese warships, 19 armed merchantmen and 10 transports carrying 4,500 soldiers, it met Strozzi's force on 24 July 1582. After an indecisive encounter, the two fleets met two days later, some 18 miles south of São Miguel, in a fierce engagement named after the island's capital, Punta Delgada.

The French initially had the advantage of the wind and attacked the Spanish rear with superior forces, but Bazán doubled with his van, precipitating a mêlée. Although the French enjoyed advantages in terms of weatherliness and, initially, in order, the Spanish prevailed by sheer hard fighting. The galleon *San Mateo*, the focal point of the battle, was assailed by no less than seven French ships, including Strozzi's *Capitana* (flagship), in an action that ultimately drew in Bazán's *Capitana*. While the major warships on both sides were amply provided with cannon, it was a battle of boarding and counterboarding that was decided by small arms, edged weapons and valour. The French lost ten ships, including Strozzi's flagship, which was boarded and captured. Strozzi himself took a Spanish arquebus ball and died a captive aboard Bazán's *Capitana*.

Punta Delgada was the first major naval engagement fought far from any continental landmass and would be the last until the battle of Midway in 1942. Although modern historians have largely ignored Punta Delgada, the English sea dog Sir William Monson was quite right to cite its importance. Although French adventurers and Dom Antonio's partisans still held the Azores, save for São Miguel, Punta Delgada was decisive. Bazán returned the next year with a massive armada: 5 galleons, 2 galleasses and 12 galleys, together with 79 sailing ships, 30 large and the rest small, carrying some 15,372 soldiers. Uniting his fleet at São Miguel on 19 July 1582 – the galleys sailed independently, arriving eleven days ahead of the rest – Bazán directed his force at Terceira, the largest of the Azores in French hands. After a careful reconnaissance, he selected the least heavily defended of three feasible beaches and mounted a model amphibious invasion, the galleys providing fire support for infantry carried ashore in small craft. Bazán's account of the action has a strikingly modern tone:

... receiving many cannonades ... the [flag] galley began to batter and dismount the enemy artillery and the rest of the galleys [did likewise] ... and the landing boats ran aground and placed the soldiers at the sides of the forts, and along the trenches, although with much difficulty and working under the pressure of the furious artillery, arquebus, and musket fire of the enemy. And the soldiers mounting [the trenches] in several places came under heavy arquebus and musket fire, but finally won the forts and trenches.

With Spanish infantry ashore in superior numbers resistance on Terceira collapsed, the other islands following suit. Dom Antonio got off with his skin and little else. The Azores held for Spain, and the Indies convoys continued unhindered. Flushed with victory, Bazán advised his imperial master that England could be invaded by sea. Thus stimulated, Philip asked his commander in Flanders, Alexander Farnese, Duke of Parma, about the feasibility of such a project. Parma was unenthusiastic, preferring a surprise attack across the Channel to Bazán's proposal to invade from Iberia; Parma did not, however, rule it out.



CHAPTER FIVE



THE GALLEON

ENGLISH VICTORY over the Spanish Armada, detail from a painting by Nicholas Hilliard (1547–1618) in the collection of the Apothecaries Guild, London.

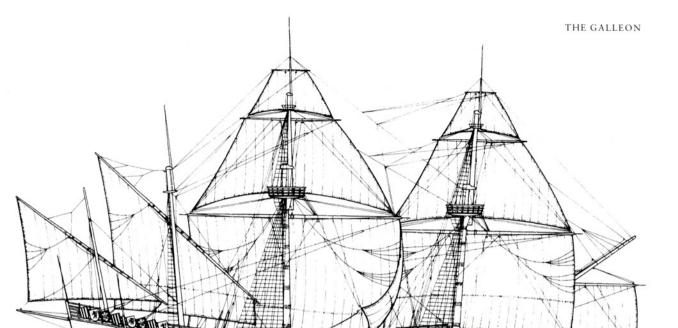
THE GALLEON

The Galleon's origins are obscure; all we can say about them with certainty is that they are European and included oared warships. The Portuguese used galleons fitted with oars to patrol the Indian Ocean in the 1510s, and early sixteenth-century French sources mention Spanish galleons as feared Mediterranean raiders. Both cases clearly involve warships, and probably ancestors of the fully developed galleon, but we know nothing about them in detail. The galleon's immediate precursors in England were 'galliasses', built from the 1520s to the 1550s, with low, almost flush-decked, hulls. These vessels—which bore no relationship to Mediterranean galleasses—lost their oars by the mid 1540s, yet as late as 1567—8, the Spanish crown built twelve small galleons fitted with oars to defend the Atlantic trade routes.

A Portuguese fleet inventory of 1525 lists twenty-one galleons in the Indian Ocean, and one galleon was built in the Venetian Arsenal between 1526 and 1530. These were oarless and clearly warships – the Venetian galleon fought at Prevesa in 1538 – but our knowledge remains sketchy until around 1540, when galleons became increasingly common in maritime art. Gleaning information from artists' depictions, gear and armament inventories, works of naval architecture and the fruits of nautical archaeology, we can approach the galleon with some confidence from this point. Particularly important in this regard is the Swedish *Vasa*, a ship intermediate between galleon and ship-of-the-line, which was sunk on her maiden voyage in 1628 and was raised intact in the 1960s.

By about 1570 'galleon' was being commonly used to designate the kind of ship that we associate with the word, but the precise meaning varied from country to country. The Portuguese *galeão* was a purpose-built warship, whereas, in Spanish, *galeón* designated warships and armed merchantman alike. The English applied the word more often to foreign vessels than their own, and the Dutch *galjoen* applied only to the vessel's projecting beakhead.

Galleons were ship-rigged with a bowsprit, foremast, mainmast and mizzenmast (or masts: large galleons had a second, bonaventure mizzen). The bowsprit carried a spritsail, the fore- and mainmasts carried square courses and topsails, while mizzens were lateen-rigged. In this respect galleons were no different from naos and carracks. The difference was in the hull which was slimmer than the carrack's, with a length-to-breadth ratio in the order of four to one to the carrack's three to one. Stoutly built to carry heavy ordnance, it had a low forecastle and – the distinguishing feature – a projecting beakhead below the bowsprit. The hull had pronounced tumble-home, that is inward-tapering sides, and the quarterdeck and poop towered above the forecastle, giving the galleon its characteristic crescent shape when viewed from the side. The logic behind these features becomes evident when we consider that the galleon was designed to carry its heaviest ordnance to fire forwards. Like the cannon-armed galley, the galleon's



underwater lines provided extra buoyancy at the bow to support ordnance, ideally two heavy bowchasers mounted under the forecastle on either side of the beak and two smaller chasers in the forecastle itself. Like the galley, the galleon's underwater lines were fine at the stern, reducing drag and improving performance. The hull lines of the *Vasa* and surviving contemporary models support this thesis, as do the plans and illustrations of Matthew Baker, Queen Elizabeth's principal master shipwright, preserved in *Fragments of Ancient English Shipwrightry*. From this perspective the beakhead's resemblance to the war galley's spur is obvious, while the forecastle was plainly more akin to the galley's fighting platform than the carrack's towering forecastle.

Galleons were more weatherly and seaworthy than carracks, and the galleon's hull, unlike the caravel's, was sufficiently capacious to carry adequate supplies and provisions for transoceanic voyages and still retain a margin for cargo. They varied widely in size, generally between 450 and 1,500 tons displacement. There were trade-offs – heavier armament and finer lines meant fewer stores and less cargo – but galleons were the first sailing vessels routinely capable of transoceanic navigation that could effectively bring heavy guns to bear offensively. That represented an enormous increase in capability. The stark contrast between the relative ease of Francis Drake's almost offhanded 1577–8 global circumnavigation as the easiest way home with his Spanish loot (with heavy loss of life, to be sure) and the three-year calvary of the 1519–22 Magellan–Del Cano expedition – 4 out of 5 ships and all but 18 of 234 men lost – says it all.

SPANISH GALLEON

12 m

40 feet

Artist's rendering of a Spanish galleon of about 1540, based on a contemporary model in the Museo Naval, Madrid. The rig is fully developed, with topgallants on the fore and main masts and a bonaventure mizzen. Note the laced-on bonnets on the mainsail, foresail and mizzen lateen sail. Characteristically, it has only one continuous gun deck. The guns on the upper deck and castles would have been relatively light.



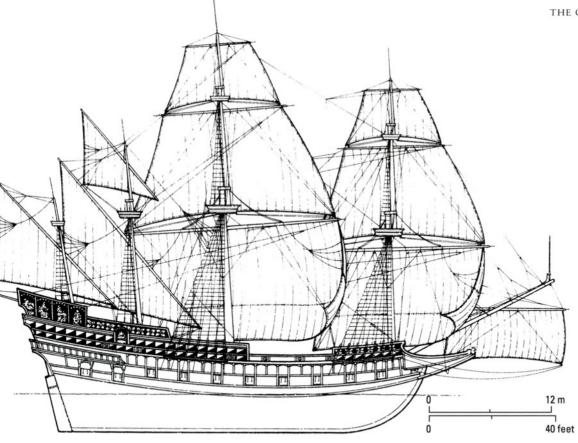
A contemporary portrait of Sir Francis Drake, one of the most able exponents of the galleon. A dynamic leader and able mariner, he was at heart a corsair, persistent attempts by later historians to see him as a preincarnation of Horatio Nelson notwithstanding.

The galleon was valued tactically for combining the full-rigged ship's seaworthiness and manoeuvrability under sail with the war galley's effectiveness as a gun platform. This is best documented for the English, but they were not unique. The heaviest shipboard guns in the 1525 Portuguese inventory mentioned above were four leões (lions), bronze pieces nominally firing a 50pound cast-iron ball; these were mounted 'forward', or 'in the prow' in 4 of the 10 galleons for which ordnance is specified. The next heaviest guns were 18-pound, stone-throwing camelos, comprising the bulk of the broadside armament and used as bowchasers in the absence of leões. Extremely heavy pieces continued to be mounted as bowchasers on galleons well into the seventeenth century, and there is ample evidence that seamen considered a heavy forward-firing battery the galleon's knockout blow. Broadside guns were considered useful and, to confuse matters,

although 'broadside' was used to describe their collective discharge just as we use the word today, their role was defensive. Regarding their galleons' accomplishments, the Elizabethan sea dogs reserved pride of place not for the defeat of the Spanish Armada, but for their successes against galleys in Spanish waters. The Cádiz raids of 1587 and – particularly – 1596 are the benchmarks.

As long as galleons remained a distinct type the design parameters described above remained essentially unchanged, but design was not static. Most importantly, as more and better ordnance became available, armament became progressively heavier and hull design was modified accordingly. This was particularly true in England where the galleon was considered ideal for corsairing and, as it turned out, defence of home waters. To this, add Queen Elizabeth's policy of encouraging her subjects to raid her enemies by sea – as private acts of war, to be sure, to avoid diplomatic embarrassment - while at the same time funding the development of a small but efficient state navy, and the result was the race-built galleon. Developed under the influence of John Hawkins, treasurer of the navy, these galleons were uncommonly sleek, with fine hulls, reduced superstructures to improve weatherliness, and unprecedentedly heavy armament. As Geoffrey Parker has shown, the first of these galleons, Dreadnought, launched in 1573, carried ordnance amounting to nearly 4.5 per cent of displacement tonnage - an unprecedented figure; by contrast, galleons commissioned early in Elizabeth's reign carried less than 3 per cent. By the time of the Armada, the figure had increased to 8 per cent, and sometimes even 11 per cent, and, of equal importance, guns with hull-smashing potential accounted for a steadily larger





proportion of the total. Race-built galleons were not true transoceanic warships, however, for their fine lines and heavy ordnance limited stowage, keeping them relatively close to home. Spanish galleons built to escort the annual Indies convoys and to haul silver were substantially less heavily armed: in 1588, these carried only some 3 per cent of their displacement in ordnance, while the Portuguese galleon *San Juan*, reputedly the best-gunned ship in the Spanish Armada, carried only 4 per cent.

There was an important human difference as well, for in contrast to Spanish and Portuguese practice, English crews were not segregated by soldiers having their own commanders and occupying higher rungs on the social ladder than seamen. Instead the ship's company worked as one, and the captain – a mariner – was in undisputed command. This yielded enormous advantages in efficiency, advantages the Dutch would share.

Spanish, Portuguese and Ragusan galleons from Sicily carried less firepower than their English equivalents, particularly in the form of hull-smashing guns, but the biggest technical difference was not in the guns, but in how they were mounted and used. The English used four-wheeled truck carriages, while the others used long-trailed, two-wheeled carriages and land carriages with large wheels. It is clear from analyses of the amount of shot fired and powder consumed that the English guns, particularly their heavy guns, fired more than those of the Armada, and to better effect. The question is how, and why.

There is an understandable tendency to assume that since sixteenth-century English carriages differed little from those of the eighteenth century, the gun drill

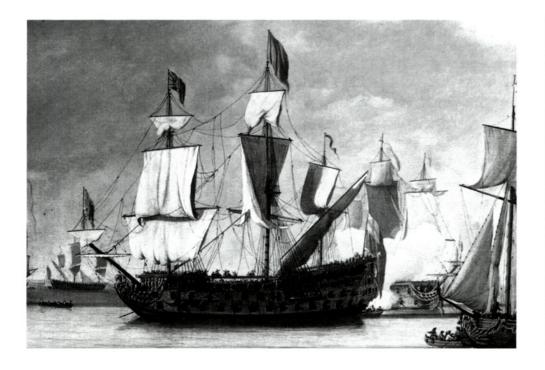
ENGLISH GALLEON

A race-built English galleon of the time of the Armada, based on contemporary plans from Matthew Baker's Fragments of Ancient Shipwrightry. Of about the same size and displacement as the Spanish galleon depicted two pages earlier, it is much more heavily armed. Its largest ordnance would have been mounted in chase and behind the two rearmost ports on the gun deck. Notice that the gundeck is 'stepped' to place the heavy pieces aft lower in the hull for reasons of stability.

Royal Prince, alternatively Prince Royal, by Willem van de Velde the Elder.
Commissioned in 1610, Royal Prince was the precursor of English shipsof-the-line. Repeatedly rebuilt and rearmed, she had a long and distinguished life before being captured by the Dutch in the Four Days Fight, 11–14 June 1666, during the Second Anglo-Dutch War.

was also similar, that is using the gun's recoil to bring it inboard for loading. There is some evidence that recoil was used on English ships of the Elizabethan era to bring guns inboard for loading, but that was certainly not universal practice and may have been confined to the heaviest chase guns. Moreover, neither records of ammunition expenditure nor of the numbers of gunners provided per gun suggest anything like the high rates of fire later obtained. Rather, the Elizabethan sea dogs probably valued the truck carriage mainly for the compactness that permitted greater angles of traverse. The preferred ship-to-ship tactic was to gain the wind; bear down and fire the bowchasers; pull parallel and fire the lee broadside; luff to bring the stern-chasers to bear; then tack to fire the weather broadside before pulling clear to reload. The English had probably adopted recoil-firing on the broadside by the 1630s, but the preferred tactics remained unchanged, for they were perfectly suited to creating advantageous circumstances for boarding and capturing.

Understandably, the Barbary corsairs took to the galleon with alacrity, for it was ideally suited to their work, and in the galleon's heyday, during the 1620s, Algiers possessed Europe's largest war fleet. The Dutch came late to the galleon, and called it by other names, but they used it to good effect: the galleon's swiftness and offensive firepower lent itself well to their interloping expeditions to Africa, the Indies and Brazil, and the first battles of any size between European fleets far from home were fought by squadrons of Dutch and Luso-Spanish galleons. In 1631 the Spanish admiral Don Antonio de Oquendo described his Dutch opponents in the battle of Abrolhos, fought some 150–180 miles off the Brazilian coast, as *galeones gruesos*, 'big galleons'. It is worth noting that Abrolhos was the first naval battle of consequence fought far from land, a mark



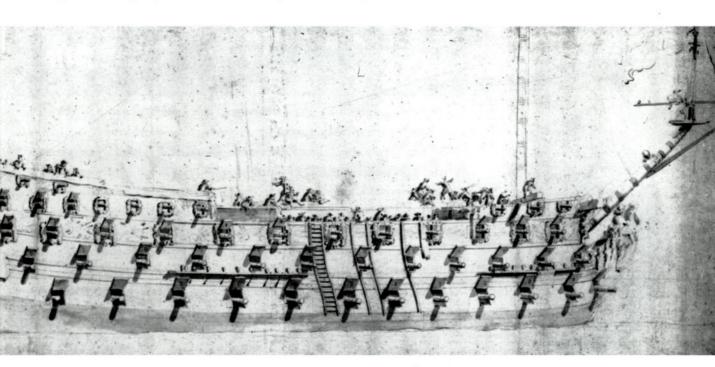


of the galleon's capabilities, and that Oquendo gained victory in a hard-fought boarding fight with the Dutch flagship, despite a manifest inferiority in heavy ordnance.

However firmly ship's masters and captains held to traditional tactics, there was an irreversible logic in the steadily increasing weight of ordnance and the design changes needed to accommodate it. As galleons acquired more and more guns, these were mounted on the broadside, for there was nowhere else to put them. The process ultimately produced the ship-of-the-line, but the ship-of-theline made little sense without line-ahead tactics, and these were counterintuitive: one does not attack by going sideways. The imperative for royal display weighed in as King James I of England (r. 1603-25) ordered construction of the Royal Prince. Commissioned in 1610, Royal Prince was a spectacular departure, displacing 1,900 tons and carrying 55 guns mounted on 2 full gundecks – galleons had one only - and a partial third. Interestingly, as Nicholas Rodger has shown, Royal Prince was copied from the slightly smaller Danish Tre Kroner, designed by a Scottish shipwright who used English lofting methods, circumstances suggesting exchanges of shipbuilding methods in northern European waters. That impression is confirmed by Louis XIII of France's principal minister Cardinal Richelieu's purchase of warships from Dutch yards, one of which, the St Louis, delivered in 1626, displaced 1,400 tons and carried 60 guns on 2 gun-decks. Vasa's lines give us a firm anchor on which to base our hypotheses. King Charles I of England (r. 1625-49) commissioned a series of 'great ships', derived from the galleon but larger and with heavier broadside.

In England the Royal Prince was followed in 1637 by the even more extravagant Sovereign of the Seas, with 100 guns on 3 full gundecks and 2,700

Sovereign of the Seas, the most powerful warship in existence when she was launched in 1637, here in a sketch by Willem van de Velde the Younger (1633–1707). The power of her broadside is evident. Not evident is her richly carved and gilded ornamentation. At first criticized by experienced sea captains as impossibly cumbersome, she served with distinction in the Anglo-Dutch Wars and was known to her enemies as 'The Gilded Devil'.



tons displacement. The French Couronne, launched in 1638, was even larger, at 2,900 tons, although she carried only 88 guns. Sovereign, like Royal Prince before her, was criticized by experienced English sea captains, Sir William Monson among them, as being impossibly unwieldy. Such vessels, they argued, could fight only on one side and would be outmanoeuvred and outshot by smaller, nimbler warships that could bring bow, weather broadside, stern chase and lee broadside to bear in turn. Given the tactical precepts of their day, Monson and his colleagues were quite right.

In fact, *Sovereign* survived into the Anglo-Dutch wars and proved herself a thoroughly capable warship, but the tactics with which she would demonstrate her prowess barely existed when her keel was laid. With full hindsight, it is possible to discern the beginnings of the galleon's transformation into the ship-of-the-line by the 1630s, but that transformation would be driven to completion only by the impetus of future wars.

THE 'INVINCIBLE' ARMADA, 1588

We found that many of the enemy's ships held great advantage over us in combat, both in their design and in their guns, gunners and crews . . . so that they could do with us as they wished. But in spite of all this, the duke [Medina Sidonia] managed to bring his fleet to anchor in Calais roads, just seven leagues from Dunkirk . . . and if, on the day we arrived there, Parma had come out [with his forces] we should have carried out the invasion.

Don Francisco de Bobadilla, the Armada's senior military officer, 20 August 1588

The defeat of the Spanish Armada marked a major turning point in world history. To be sure, the popular view that the Armada marked the beginning of England's rise and Spain's decline is overstated, but if Philip II's grand design had succeeded we would be living in a very different world. Beyond its immediate consequences – which were considerable – the Armada tells us a great deal about warfare at sea during a pivotal period of change.

The first link in the chain of proximate causation that led to the defeat of the Armada was forged in April 1572, when Queen Elizabeth, bowing to Spanish pressure, ordered Dutch privateers to be expelled from English ports. With good intelligence of Spanish dispositions, and nowhere else to go, they returned home and seized the port of Brill. Welcomed by their fellow Protestants, and finding the Duke of Alba's army overextended, they seized Flushing and Enkhuizen in May, re-igniting the rebellion that the duke thought he had snuffed out in 1567–8.

Unable to stand up to the Spanish in the field, the Dutch proved tenacious in siege warfare and quickly learned the value of their waterways. Alive to the advantages of water transport in a land with more canals than roads, Alba created a navy to support his endeavours, but could not sustain it. Its only success



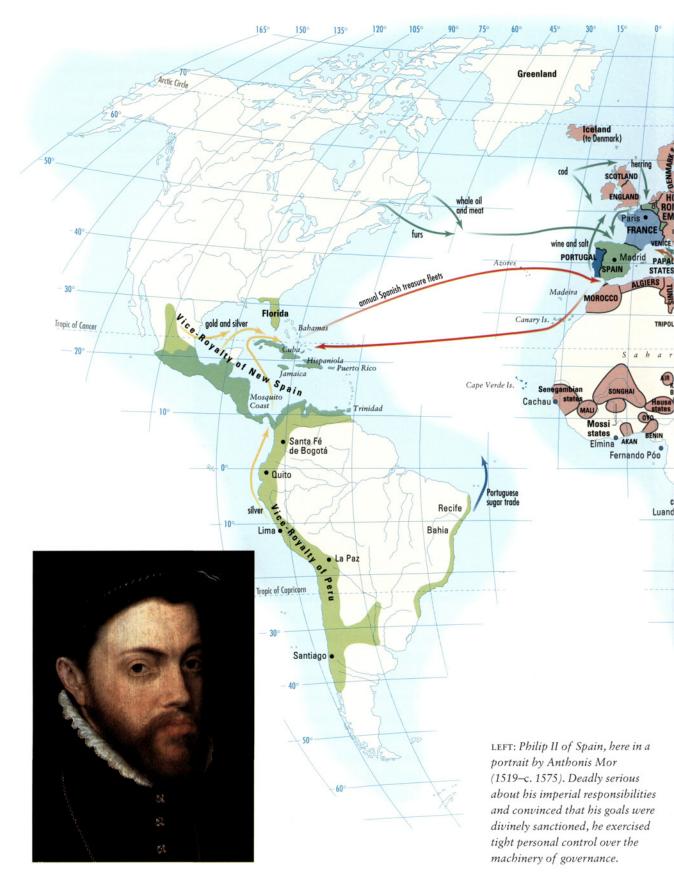
A portrait of Queen Elizabeth I by an anonymous artist. Painted towards the beginning of her reign, it hints at her shrewdness and keen intelligence. Her judicious naval policies laid the foundations for England's future greatness at sea.

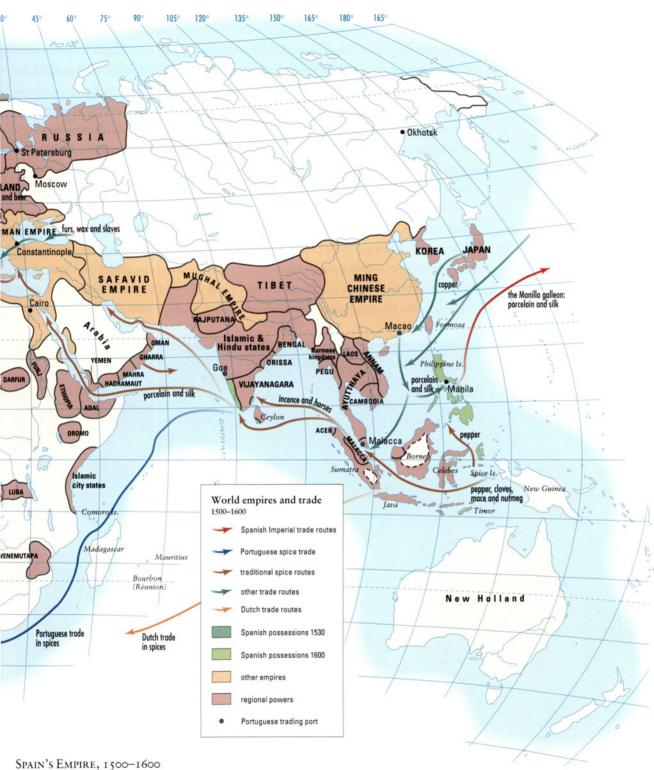
Alexander Farnese, Duke of Parma, in a portrait by Frans Porbus the Younger (c. 1570–1622). Perhaps the finest general of his day, Farnese's strategic vision and dynamic leadership brought the Dutch revolt to the brink of collapse more than once.

was cutting off Haarlem from resupply in the spring of 1573, and from that point Dutch control of inland waters did much to counter the skill and fortitude of the Army of Flanders. The high point of Spanish fortunes came in the summer of 1585, under the captain-generalcy of Alexander Farnese, Duke of Parma. Perhaps the finest general of his day, Parma had confined the rebellion to Holland, Zealand and Utrecht, with a relentless campaign of sieges, taking Antwerp in August. That May the Spanish had embargoed all northern vessels in Spanish ports. All but Dutch ships were eventually released, but the act gave Elizabeth *casus belli*.

Up to that point Elizabeth had condoned a private war against Spain, but stopped short of openly declared hostilities. Now, facing the very real possibility that Protestantism would be throttled in the Netherlands, and with







Occupying the Philippines in the final decades of the sixteenth century and absorbing Portugal's overseas possessions from

1580 gave Habsburg Spain the largest richest empire in the world. The idea that her rebellious Dutch provinces, barely visible on the map,

might not only challenge this behemoth but defeat it militarily and surpass it economically would have seemed incredible to

contemporary observers. In fact, by 1607 the Dutch had fought Spain to a standstill, forcing acceptance of the 1609-21 Twelve Years Truce. A dramatic episode in the 1585 siege of Antwerp, the detonation of engineer Federigo Giambelli's 'hellburners,' two ships stuffed with tons of gunpowder confined by layers of masonry, stones and scrap iron. Carried against the Spanish fortified bridge blocking access to the city by the tide, they breached the bridge and killed 800 Spaniards ... ultimately to no avail.

England next in line, she reacted aggressively, allying herself with the Dutch, dispatching an expeditionary force to Flanders and sending a fleet under Francis Drake to ravage the Canaries and the Caribbean. That gave Philip the excuse he needed: when Álvaro de Bazán offered to plan an invasion of England he responded positively and asked Parma to do the same.

Bazán, no doubt overstating his requirements out of caution, advocated a massive expedition to be launched from Lisbon. Parma (after an extended delay, for he was unenthusiastic about diverting his forces) proposed a less costly, but more daring, plan: a surprise crossing of the Channel in local shipping. Philip, no doubt recoiling from the cost of Bazán's proposal, settled on a hybrid plan: Bazán would take a fleet into the Channel, rendezvous with Parma and convoy him to England. Orders to that effect were dispatched to Bazán and Parma in July 1586. In terms of tonnage of ships, numbers of troops, quantities of arms, munitions and provisions and distance covered, it would be the most ambitious European naval enterprise to date, ultimately numbering 130 to 140 ships, over 90 of them of 200 tons displacement or more, carrying some 7,000 sailors and 19,000



soldiers. Parma would assemble 27,000 troops at their embarkation ports, along with 270 vessels to carry them to England. These things were not done easily.

Galleys aside, the only purpose-built warships available were three Portuguese galleons, survivors of those seized in 1580, and four Neapolitan galleasses. To these we can add 17 galleons, including 10 of Spain's Indies Guard, which were designed to haul bullion and protect treasure convoys. The bulk of the Armada's carrying capacity consisted of impressed merchantmen, armed with whatever could be found, and lightly armed hulks (the generic term for large merchantmen).

A fleet under Drake raided Cádiz in April 1587, destroying twenty-four ships and immense quantities of supplies. Drake's presence put the Indies convoys at risk. Bazán sailed for the Azores to bring them home, and indeed did so, but at considerable cost in terms of wear and tear on both ships and crews. A November storm battered up the Armada in harbour; Bazán died in February 1588.

Bazán's replacement was the Duke of Medina Sidonia, who was short on combat experience afloat, but a superb administrator. Recognizing the enormity of his task, he begged to be excused, but his pleas and subsequent arguments against the wisdom of the enterprise fell on deaf ears, for Philip knew that God approved. Due largely to the duke's competence, the Armada finally cleared the Tagus river on 30 May 1588, but with bad cooperage and putrefying provisions – partly a consequence of Drake's destruction of barrel staves in Cádiz in the previous year. Scattered by a storm while putting into La Coruña (Corunna) for fresh supplies, the Armada was further delayed, finally departing on 21 July. After yet another storm on 27 July that cost it two days and four galleys, the Armada entered the Channel on 30 July. Formed in a deep line abreast, with rearward-

The successful defence of Cádiz against the English in November 1625, by Francisco de Zurbaran (1598–1664) in the Prado, Madrid. The Spanish commander, Don Fernando Giron, at left, is confined to his chair by gout. The operations are amphibious and the Spanish galleys are holding their own; the Spanish were more successful on this occasion than in 1587 or 1596.



OPPOSITE: An engraving by the Dutch artist Claes Jans Visscher of the English galleon Griffin which took part in the Armada campaign. It was drawn long after the event and the details of hull, sails and rigging are problematic. curving wings tipped by its most capable warships to discourage attacks from the flanks and rear, it seemed unstoppable.

To face this juggernaut England could muster twenty-three large royal warships, almost all race-built galleons, some thirty large private warships and a host of smaller vessels. High Admiral Lord Howard of Effingham had been persuaded by Drake, his newly appointed vice admiral, to bring the bulk of his force west to Plymouth, leaving a small squadron under Lord Henry Seymour in the Downs, a roadstead off the south-eastern coast of England, to watch Parma.

THE INVINCIBLE ARMADA: THE STRENGTHS OF THE FLEETS, 30 MAY 1588

SPANISH

- 20 galleons, averaging 600 tons displacement, including 3 former Portuguese royal warships and 10 galleons of the Indies Guard
- 47 armed merchantmen, averaging 680 tons displacement each
- 21 hulks, large merchantmen impressed to haul troops and supplies, many of them Mediterranean vessels poorly suited for the Atlantic
- 4 galleasses, displacing about 1,000 tons each
- 4 galleys
- 31 small ships for dispatch vessels and scouts

ENGLISH

- 23 royal warships, displacing from 250 to 1,500 tons each, the bulk of them race-built galleons
- 30 private warships, displacing 300 to 600 tons each, the more heavily armed of them equivalent to royal warships of like size
- 30 private warships, displacing 200 to 250 tons

10 small royal vessels, pinnaces and the like 1 galley

162 small private ships

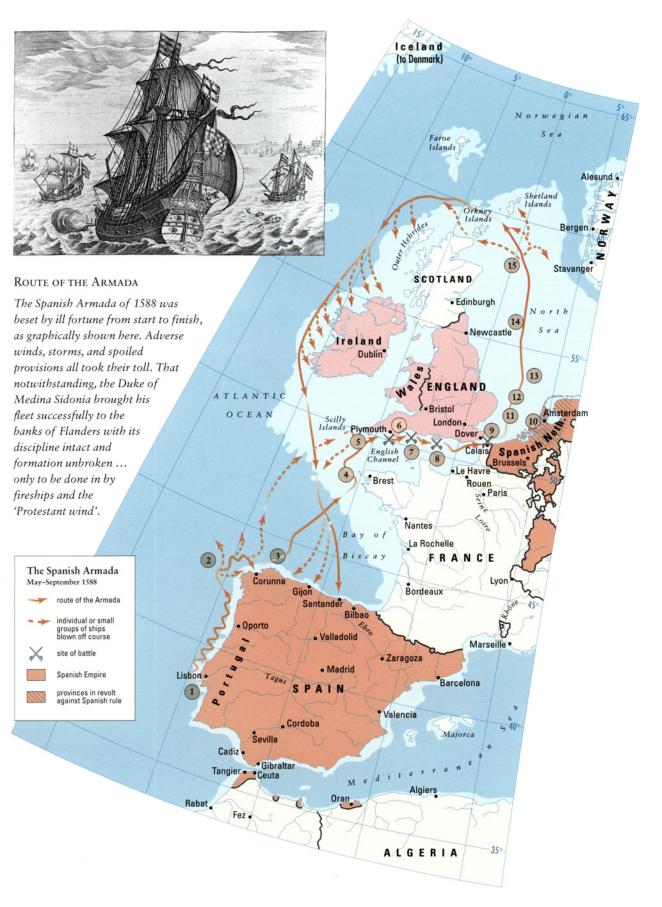


A contemporary broadside depicting Lord Charles Howard of Effingham, High Admiral of England in 1588, at the time of the Armada.

- 30 May: the Armada departs Lisbon numbering 128 ships and 29,453 men, heading north against adverse winds
- 2 14 June: the Armada arrives off Cape Finisterre and waits for supplies to be sent out but nothing appears. Medina Sidonia decides to enter Corunna harbour with 40 ships, the rest to enter the next day. The waiting ships, however, are scattered by a violent storm, some even sailing as far as the Scilly Islands off the Cornish coast. They are found by a Spanish dispatch boat on 30 June and brought back to Corunna
- 3 21 July: the Armada sails from Corunna now numbering, after recovering ships blown off course by the storm and receiving reinforcements, 131 ships and 24,607 men
- 4 25 July: the Armada passes Ushant and makes a heading for England
- 5 29 July: in the afternoon the Armada passes Lizard Point, Cornwall

- 30 July: 54 ships of the English fleet sail out of Plymouth, managing during the night to take a position windward of the Spanish fleet. The Spanish are shocked to see eleven more English ships tacking into the wind at what seems incredible speed to join their fleet
- 7 31 July: the English attack and inflict some damage on the Armada with no losses
- 8 2–4 August: the English attack again and harry the Spanish
- 9 6 August: the Spanish fleet anchors some 4 miles off Calais with the English fleet anchoring nearby. Later in the day English reinforcements arrive; the Spanish now face some 230 ships
- 6 August: the intended link up with the Duke of Parma's forces in the Spanish Netherlands proves impossible. Parma has effectively deceived the Dutch as to his intentions. They are defending against an attack on Amsterdam. Parma will be ready to link up within 48 hours, but by then it will be too late

- 7 August: fireships are sent against the anchored Spanish fleet around midnight on the 7th. The Spanish cut their anchor cables and set sail in disorder
- 12 8 August: at dawn the Spanish fleet is scattered over some 12 miles of ocean. The English attack as the Spanish are reforming and the ensuing battle drags on all day with the English gaining the upper hand. Despite having better ammunition, the Spanish are suffering badly when a sudden squall blows, enabling them to draw away
- The Spanish fleet, intending to refit at a Flemish port, is caught by unfavourable winds. Medina Sidonia decides to return to Spain by circling the British Isles. Regaining a close formation they head north, pursued by the English fleet
- The English fleet, short of provisions, returns to its home ports
- The Armada continues its long journey, battle-damaged and hit by storms, causing terrible hardships. Of the 131 ships that set out, 63 were lost in or as a result of battle or shipwrecked. Of the 34 others lost, their fate was unrecorded or unknown. The remaining 55 ships straggled into Spanish ports during September



The dispatch of fireships against the Armada off Calais shortly after midnight on 7 August 1588, captured on canvas by Hendrik Cornelisz Vroom (1566–1640). The loss of anchors, cut loose in frantic attempts to stay clear of the flames, ultimately did far more harm to the Armada than the fireships.

Informed of the Armada's approach by a watchful pinnace, the English warped out of Plymouth during the night and gained the wind. Medina Sidonia had already missed his first, and probably best, chance of victory two days earlier by rejecting suggestions to sail directly for Plymouth and blockade the English in port rather than wait to assemble his entire fleet.

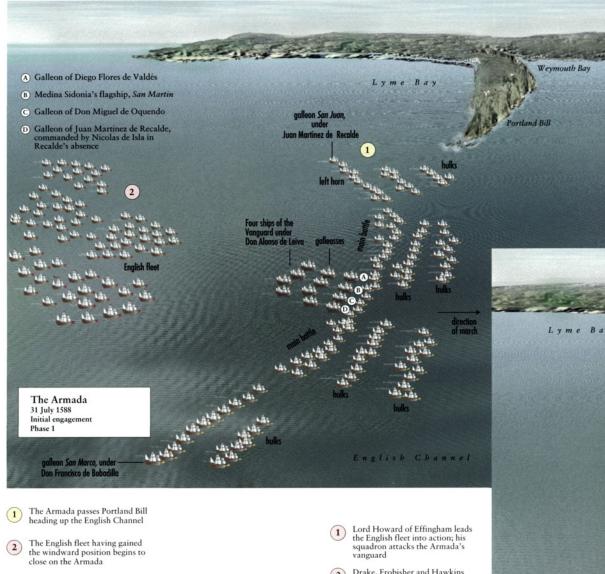
The Spanish superiority in a boarding fight was evident, as was the English advantage in stand-off gunnery. Indeed, Philip had warned Medina Sidonia in April 1588 that 'the enemy's intention will be to fight at long range on account of his advantage in artillery ... to fire low and sink his opponent's ships', and so it



was, although not as anticipated. The English formed line and passed alongside the Spanish, harrying them with broadsides, but not to any discernible effect. The only advantage came from accidents among the Spanish (a powder explosion and a series of collisions on 31 July) that delivered two ships to the English the next day – one of them the powerful galleon *Nuestra Señora del Rosario* – along with several tons of gunpowder.

On 2 August, the English tried to penetrate the Armada's interior, only to be met by powerful warships that had been detailed by Medina Sidonia to protect the merchantmen and hulks. The wind dropped for a time, enabling the galleasses





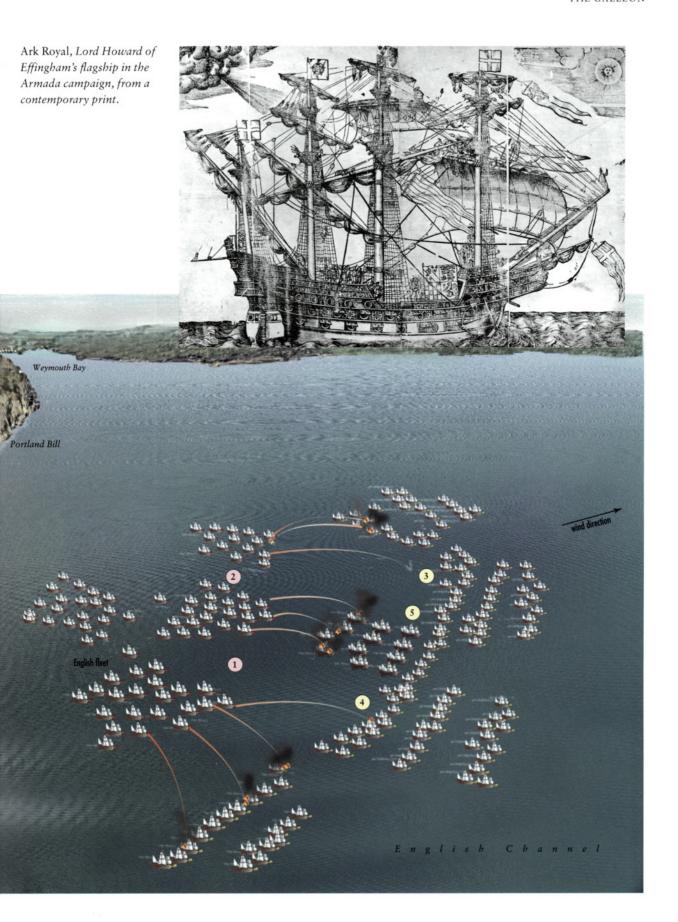
THE ARMADA ENGAGED

In the initial clashes between the Spanish and English off Portland Bill, both sides confronted unforeseen challenges. For the English, the solidity of the Spanish formation was daunting; for their part, the Spanish were surprised and impressed by the superior weatherliness and manoeuvrability of the English ships. As it

turned out, the most significant events of the initial encounter were triggered by Spanish accidents: a magazine explosion and an accidental dismasting that left two ships abandoned. The Armada is depicted according to its tactical organization, after Colin Martin and Geoffrey Parker, The Armada.

- 2 Drake, Frobisher and Hawkins lead their respective squadrons into attack on the Spanish rearguard
- 3 By the end of the afternoon the battle was over; the Spanish commander ordered the fleet to reform. In attempting to do so there was a collision in the Andalusian squadron
- 4 Late afternoon, San Salvador, the flagship of the Vice Admiral and Paymaster General of the Armada suffered a magazine explosion. She was later boarded and captured by the pursuing English and taken to Weymouth
- S Nuestra Señora del Rosario, flagship of Don Pedro de Valdés, is damaged in a series of collisions and loses her foremast. Unmanageable, she is left behind during the night and surrenders the next morning to Francis Drake. Drake's discovery that English gunfire had inflicted only modest damage on Rosario may have been behind the subsequent English decision to engage at closer range on 3 and 4 August

Initial engagement Phase 2





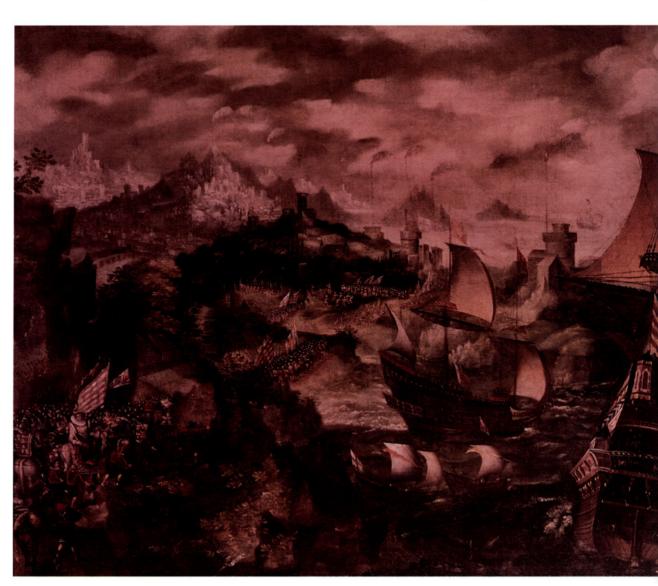


On 6 August, Medina Sidonia, having heard nothing from Parma and fearful of over-shooting his rendezvous, brought the Armada to anchor off Calais, within 25 miles of Parma's embarkation ports. That evening he received his first word from Parma.

Parma had thoroughly outfoxed the Dutch, avoiding the attentions of a blockading squadron under Prince Justin of Nassau, and successfully concealing his intentions, but had held his men back from their ports for reasons of deception. This detail revealed a fatal flaw in Philip's plan: lacking a deep-water port in Flanders or control of the Channel, it required precise co-ordination, something that is exceedingly difficult to achieve with large and heterogeneous forces, both then and now. In fact, Parma ordered embarkation to proceed as soon as he learned that the Armada was at Calais, and within forty-eight hours he was ready, poised to strike.

Meanwhile Lord Howard had anchored within sight of the Armada and was

A near-contemporary depiction by an unknown artist of the Armada under attack. He has effectively conveyed the chaos of hattle.



receiving reinforcements by the hour, Seymour among them. A council of war decided to send in fireships, and preparations were made accordingly. Caught in an exposed roadstead, and with an offshore breeze, Medina Sidonia ordered his captains to set a second anchor.

At around midnight on 7 August eight small ships stuffed with combustibles warped in with the tide. Medina Sidonia had posted a screen of small craft as a precaution and their crews managed to tow two-of the fireships clear. The rest proceeded on course, their crews taking to the boats; it was perfectly timed and executed. At the sight of the approaching flames, the Spanish panicked, chopping cables and leaving anchors behind. No ship was burned, but the attack succeeded beyond expectations. Dawn found the Armada scattered and the flag galleass aground.

The ensuing battle, named after nearby Gravelines, was intense and confused. Medina Sidonia's flagship, *San Martin*, and four of his best galleons sought to



interpose themselves between the rest of the Armada and the English. They fought with admirable fortitude and were generally successful, but the English, using their agility and firepower to full advantage for the first time, closed and inflicted terrible damage. The wind drove the battle north. One galleon was sunk outright and Medina Sidonia's five stalwarts were mauled. By day's end, the flag galleass had been destroyed and the Armada driven so far to windward that any hope of-a rendezvous with Parma was gone. Medina Sidonia gave orders-to proceed home the long way round. Most of the galleons made it, a tribute to their design and construction. Many of the rest did not, being driven against the Scottish or Irish coasts and wrecked, their anchors still lying on the bottom off Calais and not available when needed.

It was a close-run thing. Had one of Medina Sidonia's numerous messages to Parma announcing his intentions and progress arrived in time – a real possibility



- Parma could have been ready when the Armada arrived. The English had been unable to stop the Armada and Parma would have had his escort. Had his veterans made it ashore there can be no doubt that they would have made mincement of Elizabeth's militia.

It did not happen. England remained Protestant and Elizabeth queen. The Dutch Revolt prospered. The Royal Navy was vindicated as the core of England's defence, but that same navy proved incapable of offensive strategic decision. English raids could be highly destructive – that on Cádiz in 1596 far surpassing Drake's earlier attack – but accomplished little beyond increasing Spanish defence expenditure, including the creation of a navy which, though unable to succeed where the Armada had failed, effectively protected the treasure fleets. The war wore on in inconclusive attrition until Elizabeth's death in 1603 and the truce called by her successor James I in the following year.

A Hendrik Vroom depiction of a sea fight, perhaps the 1596 battle of Cádiz, featuring galleons and galleys locked in combat. If it was indeed intended to show Cádiz, it is a representation of one of the first times in which galleons took on galleys on terms favourable to the latter and won convincingly.



HANSAN STRAIT, 1592

So far our story has been mostly European, for it was Europeans who first took gunpowder to sea with important long-term consequences. There was, however, a singular exception: the Korean repulse of the invasion launched by the Japanese ruler Toyotomi Hideyoshi. The story is a dramatic one of sea power versus land power, perhaps the limiting case. On the Korean side it is also a story of technological innovation harnessed by a gifted leader, Admiral Yi Sun-sin. The background is complex, involving dynastic politics and maritime interactions



among Ming China, Korea and Japan. The three nations' differing technological trajectories were deeply embedded in their cultures and social fabrics, and nowhere was this more striking than in their approaches to gunpowder, war and the sea.

We have already discussed Ming China. Korea's Choson dynasty (1392–1910) had close links with the Ming dynasty, whose suzerainty it recognized. The largest single difference among the three nations lay in the political dominance of Japan by a warrior élite, the samurai. Like China and Korea's mandarins, the samurai



were supported by land rents and agricultural taxes in kind and were thus inclined to distrust things commercial and maritime. They were, however, a caste whose members invoked their martial capabilities to justify and enforce their legitimacy. Perhaps in consequence, Japanese culture tolerated a degree of decentralization that was alien to the Confucian ideal of China and Korea. The result was a constant honing of martial skills and a remarkable openness to military innovation, albeit on land.

How and when gunpowder weapons arrived in Japan is uncertain, although the evidence points to the Portuguese and the 1540s. However that may be, the samurai grasped gunpowder's potential and quickly matched, and in some respects surpassed, Europe in the use of individual firearms. As in Europe, mastery of gunpowder weapons facilitated the consolidation of political power, ending a century of constant civil war. In 1575, the daimyō (territorial magnate) Oda Nobunaga (family name first, Japanese style) employed massed volleys of arquebus fire to shatter the ranks of the powerful Takeda clan at the battle of Nagashino, paving the way for political unification. The process was interrupted by Nobunaga's assassination in 1582, but his successor, Toyotomi Hideyoshi, carried it to completion. Hideyoshi, who began his rise to power as an ordinary soldier in Nobunaga's ranks, was a man of uncommon ability and boundless ambition. Having unified Japan, he looked elsewhere to leave his mark on history, and settled on China, by way of invasion through Korea.

A sixteenth-century
Japanese folding screen,
showing in lacquer the
arrival of the Portuguese in
Japan. The artist has done a
creditable job of depicting
the unfamiliar details of
European sailing ships and
their rigging. The most
important consequence of
these early encounters was
the transfer of gunpowder
technology.

A Japanese depiction of Toyotomi Hideyoshi, unifier of Japan, renaissance prince and one of the most powerful rulers of his day. As with many contemporary European depictions of royalty, he is shown armed and armoured for shock combat, the growing importance of gunpowder notwithstanding.

At first blush, Hideyoshi's plan to conquer the enormity of China seems a pipe dream, but reflection and a look at the map suggest otherwise. The distances involved were no greater than those faced by earlier invading Mongol armies, nor, once ashore in Korea, were the geographic barriers insurmountable. Having honed their tactical and logistical skills in a lifetime of civil war, Hideyoshi's daimyō could bring to the battlefield a combination of firepower and shock action that was unrivalled in Asia and, perhaps, the world.

In the summer of 1591, while making diplomatic overtures to the Korean court in Seoul, Hideyoshi ordered preparations for invasion. By the following spring, he had assembled an army of nearly 160,000 men – huge by contemporary Asian or European standards – organized into 9 brigades, plus a fleet of 700 impressed ships manned by 9,200 seamen and commanded by four *daimyō*.

The invasion fleet reached Pusan on 23 May 1592. Finding the defences poorly maintained and the defenders ill-prepared, the Japanese quickly seized the port and drove north, reaching Seoul on 11 June and Pyongyang on 23 July. Estimating that his forces would be in Peking by October, Hideyoshi announced plans to depart from his capital of Kyoto for Korea. As the Japanese went from victory to victory on land, the fleet worked its way along the coast, looting and pillaging as it went, in the best tradition of the Japanese – or at least mostly Japanese – wakō pirates of an earlier age, planning to rendezvous with the army on Korea's west coast with supplies and 52,000 fresh troops for the drive on Peking. The Korean king appealed to the Ming for help, but Chinese aid would take time to arrive, if it came at all, and in the meantime the Japanese armies were unstoppable. Only the navy stood between Korea and disaster.

Like the Ming, the Choson were thoroughly Confucian and inclined to devalue things martial and maritime. But Korea is a peninsula, with much of the interior readily accessible from the sea, and the Koreans, unlike the Chinese, could not afford to deal with the *wakō* by withdrawing from the coast; their peninsula was too small. Of necessity, they created a standing navy and sent agents to China to bring back the secret of gunpowder. By 1592, the Choson dynasty was in decline, undercut by dissent, corruption and incompetence at the top, but the navy consisted of purpose-built warships sailed by professional crews. Moreover, Korean warships were armed with pyrotechnic projectors and cannons, which, if not the equal of heavy European ordnance, were far superior to anything the Japanese possessed. Among the Korean warships were perhaps two dozen oared, cannon-armed vessels with retractable masts and sails, a curved overhead deck protected from fire by thin iron plates festooned with sharpened steel spikes to discourage boarding, and smoke projectors within their dragonheaded prows. These were called turtle ships.

At this point, Admiral Yi Sun-sin comes into our story. Of humble origins, he had advanced by merit through the military hierarchy, observing Confucian protocol, but refusing to suffer fools – including superiors – gladly, and making enemies along the way. When Hideyoshi struck, Yi was commanding the naval



HIDEYOSHI'S INVASION OF KOREA, 1592

The map makes clear the importance of co-operation between Japanese land and naval forces and the critical importance of the Korean navy. Ironically, Hideyoshi's suppression of seaborne piracy among his coastal samurai had the effect of reducing the competence of his naval commanders.

forces of Left, or Eastern, Cholla Province, in the centre of Korea's southern coast. His neighbour to the east, who was responsible for Pusan, was Admiral Wön Kyun, commander of Kyongsang Province. A well-connected poltroon, Wön Kyun withdrew in panic and called for help. Yi marshalled his forces and collected intelligence. On 3 June 1592 his advance guard, probing eastwards, encountered a Japanese squadron off Kyonnaeryang Island, south-west of Pusan, and bloodied it.

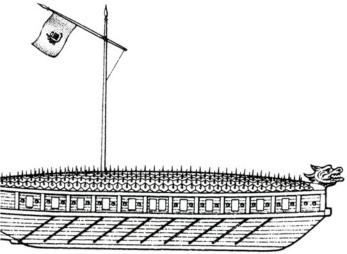
Having confirmed his view of the tactical character of the Japanese invasion, Yi now launched his counterstroke. Included in his plans was a newly perfected turtle-ship design that had completed its trials days before the Japanese landing. In a blistering series of combats along Korea's southern coast Yi defeated the Japanese in detail, exploiting his superior knowledge of geography, tides and currents, and helped by the divided Japanese command.



solidly built than the 'superstructure ships' that formed the backbone of the Korean fleet. Turtle ships spearheaded Yi's attacks, belching smoke from their dragons' heads and fire from the cannon in their flanks. Effectively invulnerable to boarding, they shattered the Japanese formations, leaving the few large vessels isolated and the surviving smaller ones to be picked off in detail. Again and again the Japanese retreated ashore, under protection from land-based covering fire. Japanese determination and valour were impressive but insufficient. In an early battle, samurai leaped aboard a turtle ship's back, ripped off iron plates by brute force, chopped their way inside and butchered the crew, a remarkable feat that was not repeated.

Although Yi's victories were incomplete tactically, for he dared not let his men pursue their beaten foes ashore, they were strategically decisive. The turning point came on 1 August in Hansan Strait, when Yi, with 85 ships, perhaps two dozen of them turtles, all but annihilated a Japanese fleet of 70 vessels, 36 of them large and 14 medium sized, ending the last Japanese offensive thrust. On 21 October Yi attacked the Japanese base at Pusan with 74 warships and 18 auxiliaries, destroying 100 of 470 Japanese vessels drawn up along the shore

A modern statue memorializing Admiral Yi Sun-sin, still revered in Korea as a national hero. Yi's enduring popularity as a patriotic symbol presents strong parallels to that of Khaireddin Barbarossa in Turkey and Horatio Nelson in Britain. Like Nelson, Yi died in his moment of triumph, felled by a musket ball.



TURTLE BOAT

The turtle boat's design derives from traditional flat-bottomed Korean fishing vessels. They measured about 115 feet from the dragon's chin to the tip of the tail and were about 30 across at the widest part and were armed with ten cannon on the broadside, some of them firing arrow-like projectiles. In action, smoke from a

projector in the bows belched from the dragon's mouth. The mast retracted into a slot in the curved, armoured back from whence the vessels got their name. The armour consisted of thin hexagonal plates of iron studded with sharp steel spikes to discourage boarding. On occasion the back was covered with straw to conceal the spikes.



BATTLE OF HANSAN STRAIT, 1592

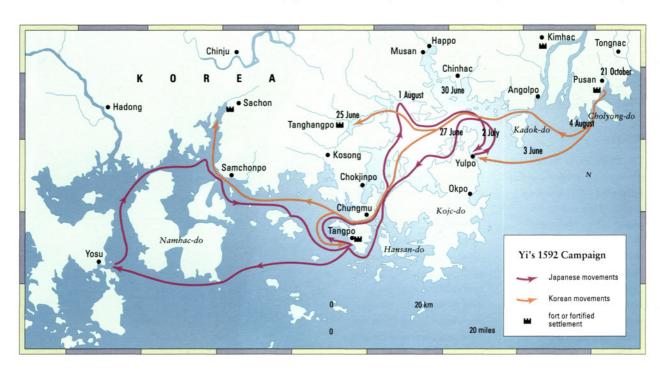
Admiral Yi Sun-sin's 1592 summer-autumn campaign is one of the great classics of warfare at sea. Taking advantage of Hideyoshi's fragmented command arrangements and the fact that the Japanese were tied to the coast, ravaging as they went, Yi defeated them in detail in a series of blistering engagements. These grew in scale as the Japanese realized the gravity of the threat posed by Yi and his fleet. The climactic battle was Hansan Strait, right. Following defeat, the Japanese went over to the defensive and withdrew to Pusan.

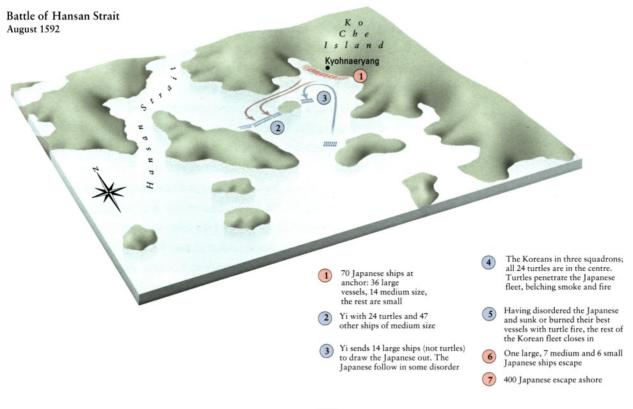
and inflicting heavy losses before superior numbers and Japanese shore batteries forced his withdrawal. Yi pulled back to replenish and refit, leaving the decimated Japanese under blockade.

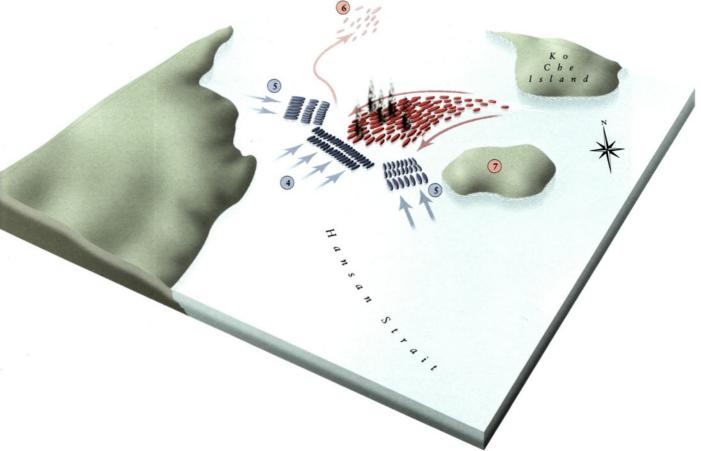
Korea was a poor country, and the Japanese suffered from a lack of supplies; moreover, their brutality had provoked a bitter guerrilla resistance. A huge Ming army intervened in early 1593 and captured Pyongyang in February. Facing starvation, the Japanese inflicted a sharp defeat on the Chinese to cover their withdrawal, then retreated into the bitter cold of the Korean winter, hurried along by guerrillas. Facing destruction, Hideyoshi's commanders called for a truce and opened negotiations with the Chinese. By October 1593, the Japanese had evacuated Korea, apart from a garrison of 10,000 at Pusan.

The negotiations dragged on as Hideyoshi sought to achieve by diplomacy what he could not gain by arms, while the Ming sought concessions of suzerainty. Conducted through intermediaries, who exploited Sino-Japanese incomprehension to smooth over irreconcilable differences, the negotiations left much unsaid, and the Koreans were caught in the middle. Matters reached a climax in the winter of 1596, when Hideyoshi received Chinese emissaries in Kyoto and for the first time heard the Ming terms accurately translated. Far from proffering a princess in marriage, ceding Korean territory and recognizing his sovereign authority, as Hideyoshi had expected, the Ming offered to install him as king of Japan ... a Ming vassal. Flying into a rage, Hideyoshi ordered a renewed invasion. Meanwhile Admiral Yi Sun-sin had been ousted by court intrigue, reduced to the status of a common seaman and replaced by Admiral Wön Kyun.

The second Japanese invasion, launched in early 1597 with an army of







140,000 and an improved fleet, initially encountered little resistance. After consolidating at Pusan, the Japanese struck, and defeating a badly handled Korean fleet in August – Wön Kyun had driven his crews too long and hard, and the Japanese caught them ashore, seeking water. The only Japanese naval victory of the war, it was nevertheless crushing: only twelve Korean ships escaped, apparently all turtle ships. With Japanese armies driving north and naval forces ravaging their way along the southern coast, Korea was on the ropes. The Korean king again sought Ming help and, in desperation, appointed Yi Sun-sin to supreme naval command.

Working to repair the results of Wön Kyun's incompetence, Yi withdrew to Korea's south-western tip. In October, he turned on the Japanese, ambushing with 13 ships a Japanese fleet of 144 in the narrow Meiyoto Strait and annihilating it. Consolidating his resource base, Yi then rebuilt his forces and went over to the attack. A Ming fleet came to his aid, although its overbearing, protocol-conscious admiral gave Yi more problems than assistance. Mixing leadership with diplomacy – Yi gave the Chinese full credit for Korean successes – he once again forced the Japanese back on Pusan and cut off their armies from resupply.

Hideyoshi died in September 1598 and, with his death, Japan sought terms. The diplomats did their work, securing Japanese withdrawal, but in the process snubbing the Koreans, who dug in their heels, insisting on sovereignty and resisting partition. It took time, and as the diplomatic mills ground, war continued in the countryside and along Korea's southern coast. By late 1598, Kyoto and Peking had settled their salient differences, implicitly conceding that Korea should be left alone. On 16 December, the Japanese evacuated in a massive convoy. Whether unconvinced by Japanese sincerity, thirsting for revenge or seeking to make a point, Yi launched his reconstituted fleet against the Japanese, destroying some 200 of an armada of 500 ships off Noryang, in a vicious night engagement. Yi took an arquebus ball and, like Nelson at Trafalgar, died in his moment of triumph. His victories assured that neither Hideyoshi nor his successors would inherit China's imperial throne.

It was a close-run thing. Had Yi fallen in one of his first engagements instead of the last, it is difficult to see how the Japanese could have been stopped. The consequences were huge, for a Toyotomi-ruled China would have been a very different matter to the Ming China that fell to Manchu horse archers in 1644.

The Japanese were among a select handful of peoples who had repelled invasion by the similarly armed and at least equally ruthless and efficient Mongols at the height of their power, the others being the Egyptian Mamelukes in 1260 and the Vietnamese in 1288. Whether the Japanese could have defeated the Mongols in 1274 and 1281 without the famous 'Divine Wind' is debatable. The arquebus-equipped Japanese legions of the 1590s would have had little need of divine assistance.

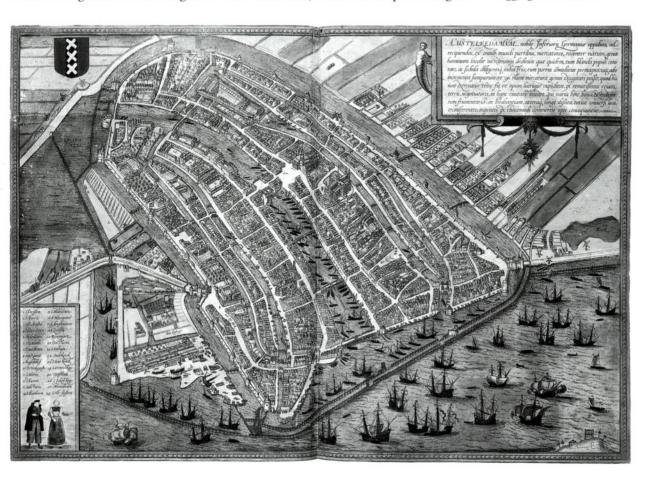
THE DOWNS, 1639

See gentlemen! The enemy is but small fry; let each one do his best for we have an easy task; the flagship will set a good example.

Don Antonio de Oquendo, Admiral of the Ocean Sea, upon learning of the Dutch fleet's strength, 15 September 1639

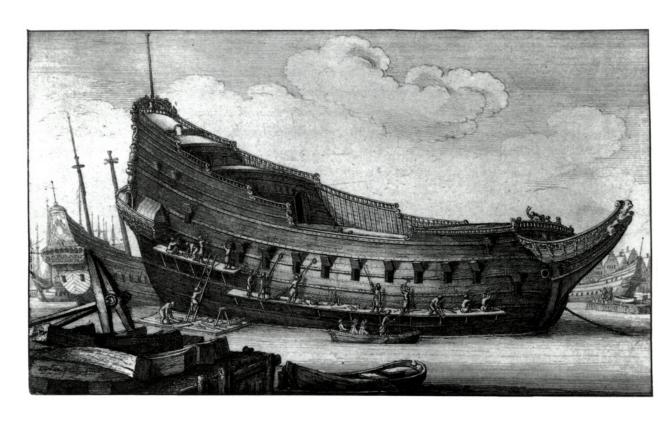
The Armada campaign was a turning point in the Dutch Revolt. Alexander Farnese, the Duke of Parma's invasion preparations gave the rebels a badly needed respite, a respite that was extended when Philip II of Spain ordered Parma to intervene in France's religious wars. Given relief, the Dutch systematically took back most of the places lost to Parma and more. Philip ended the embargo on Dutch shipping in 1590, only to re-impose it in 1595. Nevertheless, by his death in 1598 the Dutch policy of 'trading with the enemy' had produced prosperity. His successor, Philip III, tightened the embargo and ordered Dutch vessels in Spanish ports to be seized. In so doing he sowed the wind, and his empire would reap the whirlwind. Hitherto the Dutch had shown little interest in projecting violence abroad for profit, preferring peaceful commerce instead. The embargo changed that, and in short order: Dutch flotillas invaded Caribbean, South American, African and Indonesian waters, seeking trade and taking it by force, transforming the revolt into a global war. The Dutch, whose warships the English

Amsterdam, in a Dutch engraving of c. 1572.
Amsterdam was under Spanish control at the time, but that would change. The constant was Amsterdam's importance as a centre of shipping and commerce, indicated by the shipping clogging the harbour.



had deemed too small and feeble to help against the Armada, now became the principal exponents of the fighting galleon. Habsburg corsairs would wreak havoc on Dutch commerce – the other side of Philip's maritime strategy – but not enough.

The Dutch seized footholds in the Americas and, sailing directly from the



Engraving of a large Dutch East Indiaman under construction, by Wenzel Hollar (1607–77). By the 1620s and 1630s, large Indiamen were as heavily armed as specialized warships had been only a decade or so earlier. Reaction to Philip III's trade embargo turned the Dutch from peaceful traders by preference to active exponents of armed coercion.

Cape of Good Hope, bypassed Portuguese India and established bases in the Moluccas. Taking spices at the source, they carried them straight home, undercutting Portuguese prices and swelling their coffers. In 1602, the Dutch incorporated the Vereenigde Oost-Indische Compagnie, VOC or Dutch East India Company, and in 1605 seized the spice islands of Amboina, Ternate and Tidore. Between 1606 and 1608 the Dutch blockaded Malacca and established a factory at Pulicat, in India, to tap into the Indian textile trade. Spanish forces from the Philippines retook parts of Ternate and Tidore, but the dispatch of reinforcements from Lisbon served only to underline the vulnerability of large Portuguese carracks to well-armed Dutch galleons.

The war in Flanders ground on, and in the spring of 1607 the Dutch sent a fleet to blockade the Andalusian coast. On 25 April it entered Gibraltar harbour and destroyed the Spanish squadron guarding the straits – just weeks after Spain, facing bankruptcy, had signed a ceasefire in the Netherlands. On 9 April 1609 the ceasefire was extended to a twelve-year truce.

The truce held in the Atlantic, but immediately failed in the East. The Portuguese attacked Pulicat in 1612, the Dutch retaliating by taking two Spanish

fortresses on Tidore. In 1615, a Portuguese squadron of four ships lost one of its number, burned by the Muslim Achinese, before being defeated by the Dutch off Malacca. A Dutch squadron of four ships then entered the Pacific through the Straits of Magellan and in July 1615 defeated a Spanish squadron of two at Canete, off the Peruvian coast. The struggle was not entirely one-sided: a Dutch



Portrait of King Philip III of Spain in half armour by Juan Pantoja de la Cruz (1533–1608). Less inclined to intervene in the details of governance than his father, Philip III faced a chronic shortage of resources in the face of growing Dutch strength.

blockade of Manila was broken by Spanish victory at Playa Honda, between 15 and 16 April 1617, and the Spanish hung on tenaciously in the Moluccas. Nevertheless, when the truce expired in 1621 the Dutch were poised for expansion in the East, and that same year chartered the West India Company (WIC) to take the fight to the Habsburgs in the Atlantic, and to turn a profit in so doing.

In 1624 a WIC-organized expedition seized Bahia, the capital of Portuguese Brazil, but the Habsburg lion still had teeth, and in 1625 a major Spanish–Portuguese expedition retook it. Then, in 1628, a WIC fleet under Piet Heyn captured the returning treasure fleet in Matanzas Bay, on Cuba's northern coast. Heyn's feat was never repeated, but the plundered silver financed an expedition in



1630 that took Pernambuco, the heart of Portuguese Brazil's rich sugar-growing region, seriously challenging Habsburg might. Meanwhile the Dutch had consolidated in the East, at first in co-operation with the English, who, in alliance with Shah Abbas of Persia, captured Ormuz, off the south-eastern coast of Persia, in the spring of 1622.

With their power growing, the Dutch expelled the English from the Indies in 1623, established a factory at Zeelandia, in western Taiwan, in 1624, and by 1633–5 had blockaded Malacca and severed the Muslim spice trade with the Red Sea – thereby undoing the work of Affonso d'Albuquerque and the sultans of Aceh.



A celebratory depiction of the return to Amsterdam of the Dutch East India Company fleet in 1599 by Andries van Eertvelt (1590–1652). The three large vessels at left and centre are fluyts, capacious and seaworthy, but heavily armed.

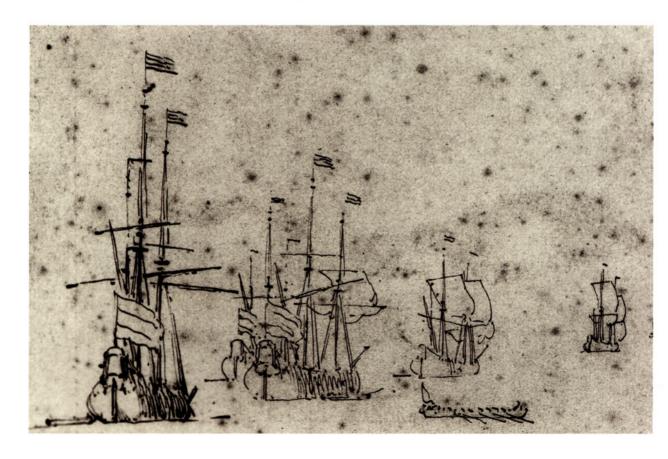
Fluyts getting under way in an anonymous roadstead by Willem van de Velde the Younger. A distinctively Dutch development dating from the end of the sixteenth century, fluyts were the most efficient bulk carriers of their day. With longer hulls relative to their breadth than carracks and with more, smaller, sails, fluyts were easier to handle and required fewer crew members.

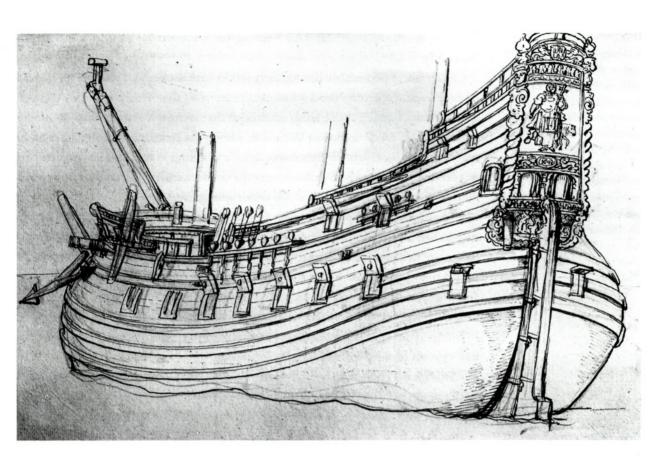
It was in European waters, however, that the decision would be reached. In 1635 Cardinal Richelieu brought France into the Thirty Years War on the Protestant side, and within three years Spain's overland connections with Flanders were severed. Henceforth, Spain could reinforce only by sea.

At first blush, Habsburg prospects seemed reasonable. Spain had built up her navy, and if the Dutch had done the same it was by heavily taxing a small population. The Habsburgs had every advantage in terms of quantity of resources, with the sole and vital exception of seamen, of whom the Netherlands had an abundance, by virtue of its flourishing trade and fisheries. Finally, Spain was helped by England's sympathetic neutrality under Charles I.

In September 1637 and again in December, Spanish squadrons under Don Lope de Hoces reached the northern French port of Dunkirk with reinforcements and bullion, giving the Dutch fleet under Maarten Tromp the slip. Although Tromp drove Hoces back into Dunkirk with losses in February 1638, the wily Spaniard slipped out in March and made his way home.

Meanwhile, the French fleet, under Admiral Henri d'Escoubleau de Sourdis, was threatening Spain's northern coast. King Philip IV of Spain and his ministers, emboldened by Hoces' success, resolved to challenge the French, and to do on a large scale by force what Hoces had accomplished by guile. Before their plans reached fruition, however, a French army supported by de Sourdis' fleet, invaded Spain. Ordered against his better judgement to confront de Sourdis, Hoces





was badly defeated at Guetaria on Spain's northern coast on 22 August 1638.

Hoces' defeat notwithstanding, Spanish preparations proceeded, and by June 1639 a strong Neapolitan squadron under Don Antonio de Oquendo, joined by Ragusan and Italian contingents, had reached Cádiz. That month the French army was driven back in a rout and Richelieu ordered de Sourdis into port after an unsuccessful attempt on La Coruña, clearing the board. By August 1639, 50 warships, including Hoces' survivors, were assembled at La Coruña with 20 transports, 8 to 10 of them English, to transport 4 tercios and bullion to Flanders. Instructions from Madrid were vague, and a council of war, convened by the Viceroy of Galicia, offered command to Hoces. Hoces refused, no doubt recalling the disastrous results of his earlier obedience to orders, and de Oquendo became Admiral of the Ocean Sea by default. It was an unfortunate choice: a renowned horseman, with impeccable bloodlines, Oquendo had considerable experience afloat, but – as he had shown at Abrolhos in 1631 – was brave to a fault, impetuous, and viewed combat afloat as a chivalric contest. His flaws would become manifest.

The Armada departed La Coruña on 5 September 1639, with 67 combatant ships, escorting 30 transports with 8,500 reinforcements for the Army of Flanders. Tromp had 28 warships to meet them, 13 cruising the Channel under his command, 10 blockading Dunkirk, and 5 returning from a cruise protecting the North Sea fisheries. To complicate matters, England's King Charles I had

A contemporary sketch of the hull of an armed mid seventeenth-century fluyt, emphasizing the capacious hull and narrow upper works, sharply reduced in size from those of carracks and galleons. The elaborately decorated, and no doubt brightly painted, stern panel is indicative of the contemporary overlap between the aesthetic and the functional.

A near-contemporary Dutch painting of Tromp's fleet before the battle of the Downs. By the time of the Downs, Dutch maritime artists had attained high standards of artistic beauty and – of enormous value to the naval historian – technical accuracy. The ships show the early stages of transition from galleon to the ship-of-the-line.

posted a squadron under Sir John Pennington in the Downs to safeguard English neutrality.

Early on 15 September the Armada fell in with an English ship whose master had encountered Tromp the day before. On learning that Tromp had only thirteen ships in the Channel, the Spanish concluded that victory was as good as won – we have this from Dom Francisco Manuel de Mello, the Portuguese commander of an embarked tercio. Overconfidence was rife. Responding to his captains' requests for instructions, de Oquendo called a meeting of his senior commanders. He issued no orders at all, uttering instead the words quoted above (p. 191).

The Dutch sighted the Spanish in the middle of the afternoon, and Tromp dispatched a ship up the Channel for reinforcements, firing a gun four times every half hour to alert them. He then called a council of war, announced his intention to fight, and instructed his captains to maintain line and hold the Spanish at bay with broadsides. This is according to de Mello, who spoke with Tromp some months later, and if the Portuguese added a rhetorical flourish to Tromp's words – Tromp's journal does not address the point explicitly – it is clear from the next day's events that he was accurate in substance.

Sunrise on 16 September found the Spanish 2 miles north-west of the Dutch, with the wind behind them, and five ships sailing under Tromp's vice admiral, Witte de With, coming up from leeward to join. The Spanish got under way in



considerable disorder, with Oquendo's flagship in the lead heading straight for Tromp. The Dutch formed in a close line-ahead – de Mello says bowsprit to taffrail; Pennington's flag captain, Peter White, says two ship-lengths apart sailing just close-hauled enough to avoid contact until the Spanish were well strung out, with Oquendo's flagship in the lead. They then luffed up and savaged Oquendo with broadsides. A Dutch ship was destroyed by a magazine explosion on the first discharge, and de With's flagship lost its stern cabin to a gunpowder accident, but the Dutch fought stolidly on. Tromp and de With in turn easily avoided Oquendo's attempts to grapple and board, and the rest of the Dutch let him have it in succession, tacking for a second broadside. Oquendo's flagship was left shrouded in smoke (the words are de Mello's), with flags 'fluttering loose in the air' and shrouds 'hanging like pennants, trembling sadly in the breeze ... cut by the chain shot of the enemy'. Others caught up with Oquendo and the battle continued, with the most capable Spanish ships in the lead. The Dutch maintained formation and easily avoided Spanish attempts to grapple, pouring in broadside after broadside. By mid afternoon it seemed that the Spanish might drive the Dutch against the French coast and win by sheer numbers, but Oquendo, his flagship heavily damaged, hove to. At nightfall the wind shifted and the Dutch sailed clear, leaving the Spanish shattered. An English squadron under Sir Henry Mainwaring fell in with them the next day and found them in distress,

Dutch and Spanish galleons duelling ship-to-ship in a painting by Cornelisz Verbeecq (c. 1590–1635) in the National Maritime Museum, Greenwich. The Dutch vessels are less lofty than their Spanish opposites and have closed stern galleries, but are otherwise similar. The early stages of the 1631 battle of Abrolhos must have resembled the action depicted here.



BATTLE OF THE DOWNS

The decisive confrontation referred to as the battle of the Downs in fact consisted of several distinct engagements, the two most important of which are shown here. In the first, the badly outnumbered Dutch, using line-ahead tactics, successfully fended off the Spanish, shredding the most powerful Spanish warships in the process. In the last, fought five weeks later, the heavily reinforced Dutch, attacking under cover of fog, destroyed the Spanish fleet.

'having been shrewdly torn and beaten by only seventeen of the Holland ships in their first encounter'.

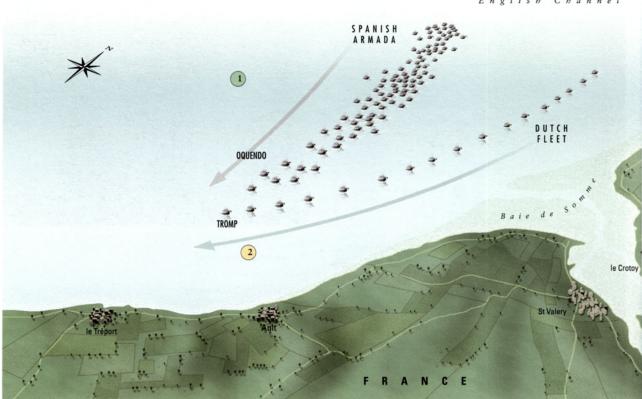
The Spanish then worked their way north, hurried along by a daring night attack in the early morning hours of 18 September. Further torn by Dutch gunfire and with Tromp between them and Dunkirk, they anchored in the Downs that afternoon. Tromp, his powder depleted, disengaged.

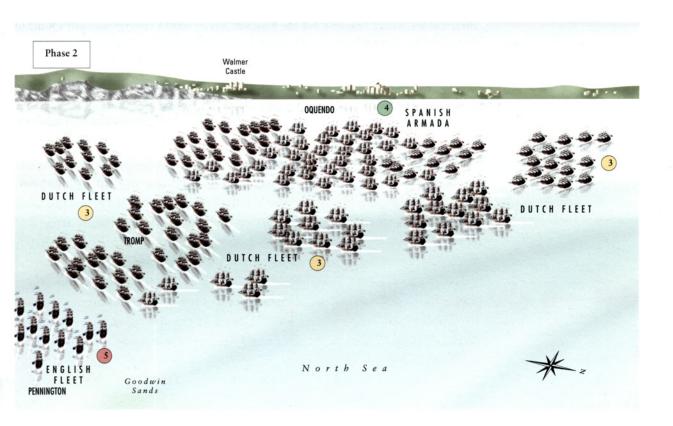
A period of waiting and reinforcement ensued, with both sides replenishing their gunpowder stores, the Spanish partly by purchase from the English at exorbitant prices. The Spanish were remarkably successful in bringing out supplies and ultimately delivered most of their troops and all of the bullion, using swift frigates to run them into Dunkirk; Tromp received a steady stream of reinforcements. Pennington looked on, with orders to protect the Spanish, but keenly aware of Tromp's growing strength. By 18 October 1639 Tromp had 103 warships, 16 fireships and orders from the States General, the supreme Dutch authority, to destroy the Spanish as soon as weather and tide permitted.

Tromp struck under cover of fog early on 21 October, detaching a squadron under de With to hold off Pennington if necessary. It was not. The Spanish cut

Phase 1

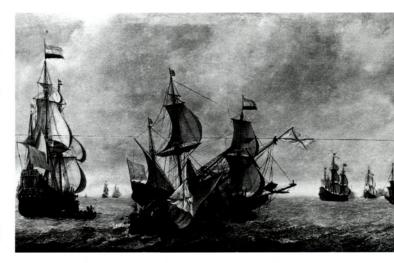
English Channel







- 16 September 1639: Oquendo's flagship followed by the vice-flagship and 65 other Spanish ships headed for Tromp's flagship
- Tromp with 17 ships maintained his fleet in line-ahead, with 2 ship lengths between ships, avoiding Oquendo's attempts to board and passing him in line, delivering multiple broadsides into the Spanish ships. Tromp loses one ship which blew up on the first broadside
- The 21 October battle was a three-way engagement between the Dutch, separated into a number of squadrons, Spanish and English fleets
- The Spanish (now down to 52 ships, a number having slipped away to Dunkirk during the night to deliver their cargo of soldiers and bullion), some cutting their anchor cables, manoeuvred for position just off the English coast
- The English with 25 ships under Admiral Pennington tried to interpose themselves between the Spanish and the Dutch, but failed in this endeavour



A contemporary Dutch impression of the final stages of the battle of the Downs. It is unlikely that things were so neat, but the ships are beautifully rendered.

their cables, many running for the English coast, where they grounded. Quoting Tromp's report to the States General, of the 53 Spanish ships remaining in the Downs, 'about 40 were either stranded, sunk, burnt, or taken, whilst the remainder were harried and scattered' in the running fight that ensued. The Dutch lost a single pinnace that became entangled with Hoces's flagship and shared her fate when she was burned by Dutch fireships. A handful of Spanish ships, Oquendo's flagship among them, reached Dunkirk.

Strategically, the battle of the Downs was decisive, foreshadowing as it did the outbreak of revolt against Spanish rule in Catalonia and Portugal in 1640.



Tactically, it revealed a huge disparity in capability and concept between the Spanish and the Dutch. Tromp's tactics on 16 September – the crucial engagement – have been heralded as the birth of the line-ahead tactics that became dominant during the Anglo-Dutch wars, and remained so until the age of steam. In fact, it was not so simple. Tromp turned to the line-ahead as a defensive expedient in desperate circumstances. For the *coup de grâce* he used fireships and mêlée tactics ... as had the English off Gravelines in 1588. His decisions reflected the galleon's growing capabilities and persistent limitations.



Admiral Maarten Tromp's barge entering the Texel in 1645 in a painting done long after the event by British artist Joseph Mallord William Turner (1775–1851). Of considerable artistic merit and technical accuracy, it underlines a historical awareness among British subjects of the Victorian age of Britain's seaborne empire's Dutch antecedents.



CONCLUSION

• ::==•D@C•>=: •

THE TWILIGHT OF GALLEY AND GALLEON

A DETAIL FROM HENDRIK CORNELISZ VROOM's rendering of the climactic moment of the battle of Gibraltar, 25 April 1607, showing the Dutch flagship ramming its Spanish opposite, which was blown apart by an exploding powder magazine. The ships are accurately depicted and the force of gunpowder vividly shown. Though it settled nothing – the Spanish and Dutch had concluded a truce in the Netherlands weeks earlier – Gibraltar demonstrated convincingly that Dutch warships, sailors and guns were the equals of any afloat.

THE TWILIGHT OF GALLEY AND GALLEON

THE AGE OF GALLEY and galleon started with a bang: the benchmark was the humiliation of the English fleet in Brest Roads, in April 1513, by Prégent de Bidoux's basilisk-armed galleys. It ended with a drawn-out whimper in the aftermath of the Downs.

The Downs marked the end of a period of transition in warfare at sea – part strategic, part technological and part tactical – that started with Dutch expansion overseas following the Spanish embargo of 1598. The strategic transition is most obvious: until 1598, although the struggle between Spain and Dutch Protestants figured large in the calculations of the major powers, it was confined to the Netherlands both in conduct and consequences. Dutch depredations on Habsburg possessions and commerce in the Americas and East Indies changed that almost overnight, transforming the Revolt of the Netherlands into a global war and placing Spain in a strategic and fiscal vice. The Spanish defeat at Gibraltar in 1607 underlined the Dutch advantage, while the Twelve Years Truce, concluded on terms advantageous to the Dutch, affirmed the magnitude of the change.

The change was most evident in European waters. The Swedish–Danish War of 1643–5 saw several hard-fought engagements, but they were indecisive and involved fleets of no more than forty ships each, some of them no doubt ships-of-the-line, in design if not tactics. With that partial exception, the Downs marked the end of an era as the last decisive engagement between large fleets composed mainly of galleons. That was partly because Spain's deteriorating strategic

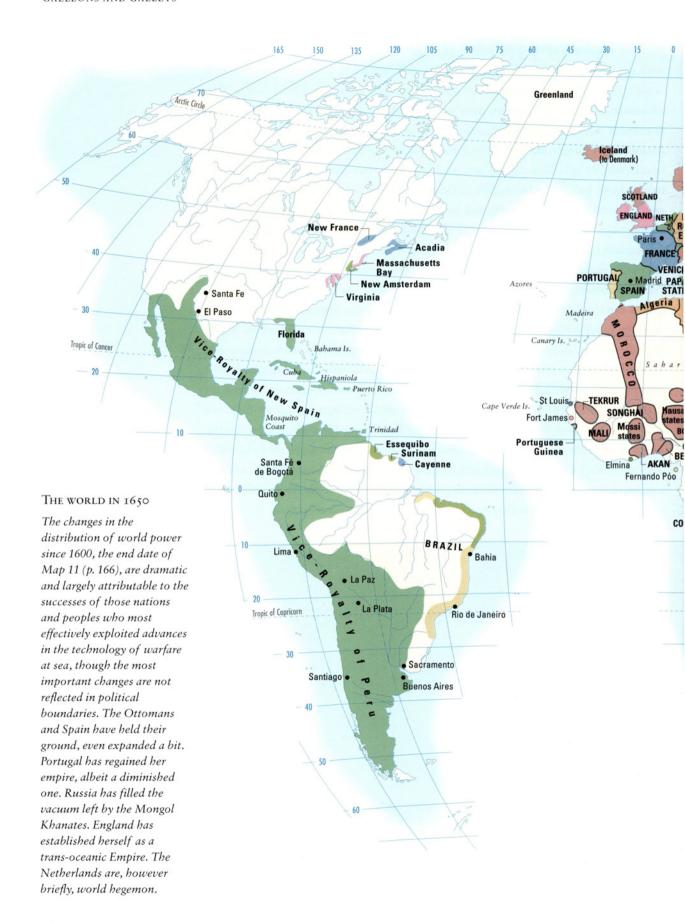


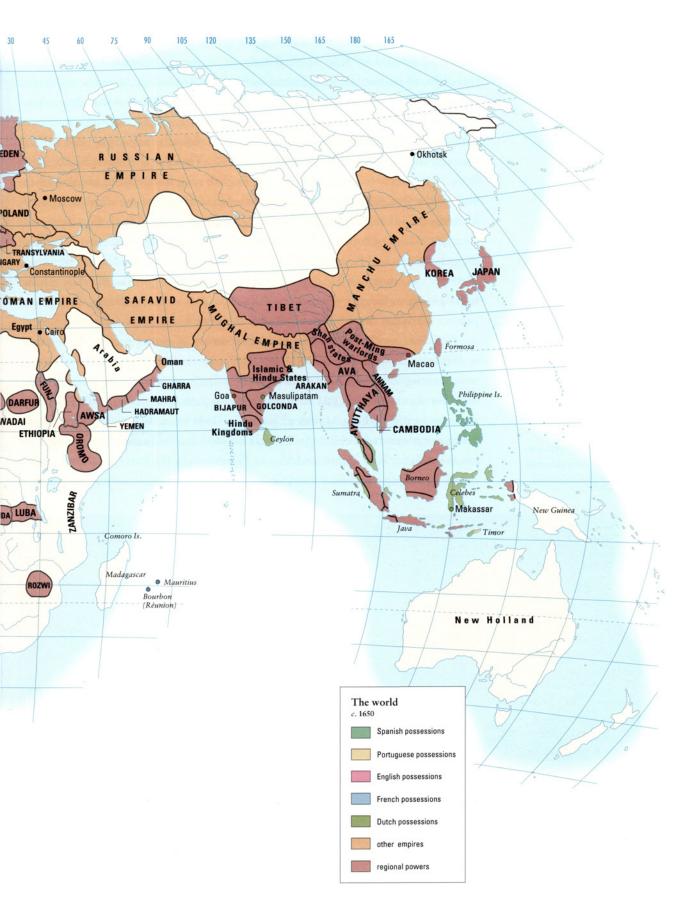
position removed it from the board as the dominant European power: *de facto* with the loss of Oquendo's fleet in the Downs; *de jure* in 1648, with the Spanish acceptance of Dutch independence and withdrawal from the Thirty Years War; and definitively in 1659, when the Peace of the Pyrenees ended hostilities with France. It was also partly because, in the years following the Downs, those nations that might have opposed the Dutch bid for world hegemony were hamstrung by rebellion. Catalonia and Portugal rose in revolt against Spanish rule in 1640; England was engulfed in civil war from 1642 until the establishment of the Commonwealth in 1649; and, in 1648, France was plunged into five years of turmoil by the first in a series of tax rebellions called the Fronde. The leaders of the nations in question understandably focused their attention on matters ashore, relegating naval affairs to the margins.

As a result the Dutch remained unchallenged at sea except on a small scale and in distant waters, and there they held the initiative. That situation prevailed until the English Commonwealth began to build up its fleet in anticipation of war with the Dutch. In principle France could have challenged the Dutch at sea – and would later do so under Louis XIV – but was hard-pressed financially by the demands of war with Spain on land. In consequence, naval operations during the Franco-Spanish War were on a comparatively small scale, even before Cardinal Richelieu's death in 1642 deprived his navy of its patron. Thereafter, French naval might swiftly dwindled into insignificance, where it remained until Louis XIV began to rule in his own right in 1661. Not until the First Anglo-Dutch War, at the battle of the Kentish Knock on 8 October 1652, would fleets of sailing warships as large as those that met in the Downs join in battle.



A Cornelis Claesz van Wieringen painting commemorating a visit to Flushing in 1613 by an English squadron transporting Frederick V, Elector of the Palatinate. This wonderfully informative painting, illustrates the early stages of a pivotal transitional period in warship design. Royal Prince is at centre right, followed by Red Lion, commissioned during Oueen Elizabeth's reign and rebuilt in 1609.





Meanwhile the galleon was giving way to the ship-of-the-line. The transition was gradual and at first applied only in European waters. Larger English warships, in particular, were functionally ships-of-the-line from the 1630s, but captains and admirals were slow to adopt the line-ahead tactics that dependence on broadsides logically entailed. Boarding and entering were the tactics of preference, and the line-ahead was considered a defensive expedient until halfway through the First Anglo-Dutch War (1652–4). Then, at the battle of Portland, from 28 February to 2 March 1653, the English rear, isolated and assailed by the bulk of the Dutch fleet under Tromp, with the advantage of the wind, survived by forming line-ahead and reducing the fight to an artillery duel, thus mirroring Tromp's tactics of fourteen years earlier. By the war's end, first the English and then the Dutch had formally adopted the line-ahead. That marked the beginning of a new era, an era strikingly unlike that of galley and galleon, for ships-of-the-line fighting in linear formation could, unlike galleys and galleons, sustain and protect maritime empires as well as capture bases and disrupt commerce.

Galleons continued to be an important means of power projection in distant waters long after the Downs, although engagements involving as many as a dozen were a rarity. The most important of these galleon wars, as we might term them, were between the Dutch and Portuguese for the East Indies and Brazil. The Dutch won the former, taking Malacca by siege in 1641 after eight years of blockade, conquering most of Ceylon (Sri Lanka) by 1640 and reducing Portugal's eastern empire to Goa, East Timor and Macao. Surprisingly, the Portuguese prevailed in Brazil, by taking a leaf from the Dutch book and pursuing hostilities by means of

A Hendrik Vroom painting of Spanish warships engaging Barbary corsairs from the National Maritime Museum. Such actions would have been far more typical of the day, and in the aggregate nearly as important, as the major sea battles to which we have devoted most of our attention.



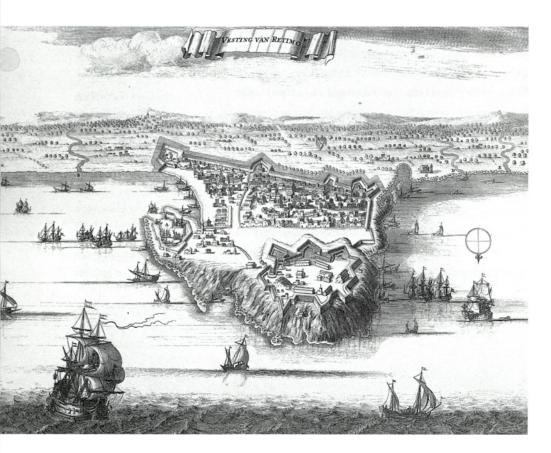
a self-supporting corporate entity, the Companhia Geral do Comércio do Brasil (the Brazilian Commerce Company), modelled on the VOC (the Dutch East India Company). Founded in 1648, the Companhia dispatched a fleet to Brazil in late 1649, supported by profits from the tobacco and sugar trades. The West India Company responded in kind, but was strapped for cash: the Dutch sailors, unpaid and mutinous, refused to stay abroad, and by 1650 the Companhia controlled Brazilian waters. Abandoned and isolated, the last Dutch planters surrendered in 1654.

Curiously, the eclipse of the Mediterranean war galley was more gradual than that of the galleon. The galleon was transformed into the ship-of-the-line, but the galley was already pressing its design limits and had nowhere to go but bigger. Tactically dominant in waters where it could operate, it was a prodigious consumer of human and fiscal resources. Having reached the apex of their strategic power at Lepanto in 1571, galley fleets declined abruptly in importance thereafter. Galleys retained their tactical utility, but in increasingly specialized roles and decreasing numbers. As late as 1599 Spain sent a galley squadron from the Mediterranean to Flanders under Federico Spinola. It operated successfully in the Channel; the Dutch built galleys to counter it, but these never numbered more than eight. The galley squadron was destroyed in 1603 by the Dutch and was never replaced. The galleys of the Knights of St John raided freely in Levantine waters throughout the 1640s, for the verdict of Lepanto held; their depredations served mainly as a *casus belli* for the Ottomans against Venice in 1654, for the Knights' galleys took refuge in Venetian ports on occasion.



Entitled 'Shipping in the Bosporus,' this van de Croos painting shows a variety of early to mid seventeenth-century vessels with commendable accuracy.

A bird's-eye view of the Venetian fortress of Retimno at the time of the War of Crete. Such places were critical nodal points of Mediterranean warfare at sea throughout the period of our concern. Galleys and galleasses played a significant role in the Venetian–Ottoman wars for Crete, from 1654 to 1669, and the Morea (the Peleponnese), from 1694 to 1698, but they were operating in conjunction with sailing warships, mostly purchased from the Dutch. France operated a small galley squadron in the Channel in the wars of Louis XIV, although by then France's galleys were arguably serving mainly as floating prisons and as an outlet for the energies of potentially recalcitrant nobles. Both Sweden and Russia used galleys in the Great Northern War of 1700–21, but this was largely because of the geography of the Baltic's inshore islands and the availability of conscripted soldiers as oarsmen.





These final conflicts were an afterglow, for by 1650 the age of galley and galleon was effectively at an end. It had been a brilliant epoch, producing major changes in the global allocation of political and economic power. The importance of the ensuing era of warfare at sea, that of the ship-of-the-line, has long been recognized, for it was ships-of-the-line that gave first England, and then Britain, world hegemony. But it is worth remembering that heavy gunpowder ordnance made the ship-of-the-line what it was, and that the considerable problems of harnessing big guns to a floating gun platform were first solved by the designers of the Mediterranean war galley, and later by those of the galleon.

Depiction of a battle between galleons and galleys – in their final days – by Abraham Storck (1635–1710). Here, a powerfully-armed galleon clashes with two galleys.



BIOGRAPHIES

ALBA, FERNANDO ALVAREZ DE TOLEDO, 3RD DUKE OF (1507–82), SPANISH MILITARY LEADER Emperor Charles V's favourite commander and perhaps the best general of his day, Alba was a brilliant logistician and understood the risks of battle. His ruthless anti-Protestantism as Philip II's Governor General in the Netherlands (1567–73) turned the Dutch revolt into a religious war.

D'Albuquerque, Affonso, Portuguese Naval Commander and Governor General of the Estado da India (served 1509–15)

The first great naval strategist of the modern era, Albuquerque gave Portugal's eastern empire its definitive form by seizing Goa (1510), Malacca (1511), and Ormuz (1515).

Barbarossa, Khaireddin (1483–1546), Muslim Ghazi leader and Ottoman Kapudan Pasha From 1533

Originally known as Hizir Re'is, Barbarossa ('Red Beard') was a master of galley tactics and the most successful of the sea ghazis opposing Spain in the western Mediterranean in the early 1500s. After consolidating his hold on Algiers, he travelled to Constantinople in 1533 to take up his appointment as Sultan Süleyman I's high admiral.

BARBARIGO, AGOSTIN (DIED 7 OCTOBER 1571), VENETIAN NAVAL COMMANDER
Barbarigo commanded the Left Wing of the Holy
League's fleet in 1571 and replaced Sebastian Venier, his Capo da Mar, in councils of war when Venier's antipathy to the Genoese and sharp reaction to
Spanish provocation made him persona non grata.
Barbarigo led his wing to victory and died in battle.

Bayezid II, Ottoman Sultan (Reigned 1481–1512) Bayezid defeated – but failed to capture and execute – his half-brother Cem in the succession struggle following Mehmed II's death and Cem found refuge with the Ottoman state's enemies: the Egyptian Mamelukes, the Knights of St John, and eventually Charles VIII of France. Since both princes' claims to

the throne were equally valid by Ottoman law, Bayezid was hamstrung in the west so long as Cem remained alive and able to renew the struggle. Bayezid moved decisively against Venice after Cem's death in 1499.

Don Álvaro de Bazán (1526–88), Marqués of Santa Cruz from 1569, Spanish naval Commander

Son of Álvaro de Bazán the Elder, Charles V's Captain General of the Galleys of Spain, he was the most renowned Spanish admiral of his day, commanding the Christian reserve at Lepanto, leading the naval arm of Philip II's invasion of Portugal in 1580, and defeating the French at Punta Delgada in 1582. He died in February 1588 as commander-designate of the Armada.

CHARLES V, HOLY ROMAN EMPEROR AND KING CHARLES I OF SPAIN (RULED 1516–56)
Charles inherited the dual kingdom of Ferdinand of Aragon and Isabella of Castile in 1516 and was elected Holy Roman Emperor in 1519. The accession of Mexico and Peru made his empire the largest on earth and the subsequent discovery of rich silver deposits in both places, particularly Peru, made it the richest. He retired to a monastery in 1556, his strategic designs frustrated by Valois France and evil luck.

Cheng Ho, Chinese admiral (commanded 1405–35)

A Ming court eunuch, probably of Central Asian origins, Cheng Ho led a series of massive naval expeditions into the Indian Ocean between 1405 and 1435, expanding his imperial masters' suzerainty and influence. The expeditions ceased when mandarin scholar—bureaucrats gained ascendancy over the court eunuchs.

COLONNA, MARC ANTONIO (1535–84), PAPAL CAPTAIN GENERAL AT SEA A seasoned warrior—diplomat, in 1571 Colonna

served as an effective intermediary between Don Juan of Austria and the prickly Venetians in the difficult

process of welding the fleet of the Holy League into an effective fighting force. His lantern galley fought alongside Don Juan's at Lepanto.

Doria, Andrea (1466–1560), Genoese leader and Naval Condottiero

Patriarch of an ancient and wealthy Genoese family, Doria was one of the shrewdest and most capable practitioners of galley warfare. His most notable political act was to switch Genoa's allegiance from France to Spain in 1528. Defeated by Khaireddin Barbarossa at Prevesa in 1538, he nevertheless effectively represented his city and his imperial patron.

Doria, Gian Andrea (1539–1606), Genoese Leader and Naval Condottiero

Andrea Doria's great-nephew and heir, Gian Andrea inherited his forebear's post as Philip II's Captain General of the Sea in the Mediterranean. Defeated by Piali Pasha at Djerba in 1560, he commanded the Christian Right at Lepanto with results that remain controversial to this day.

Doria, Piero (died 6 January 1380), Genoese Captain General at Sea

Doria inherited his post when his predecessor, Luciano Doria, was killed at the battle of Pola, 6 May 1379. He commanded the seizure of Chioggia and was famous for rejecting Venetian entreaties for negotiations. He was killed during the siege by a section of wall brought down by a Venetian cannonball.

Drake, Sir Francis (c. 1540–95), English corsair and naval leader

A favourite of Queen Elizabeth and one of the most competent seamen and naval tacticians of his age, he was at heart an entrepreneur and freebooter.

Knighted in 1581 after his circumnavigation of the globe, he was appointed vice admiral in 1588, serving as Howard of Effingham's second in command for the Armada campaign. His prescient appreciation of the effects of close-range gunfire was probably critical to the defeat of the Armada.

EDWARD III, KING OF ENGLAND (REIGNED 1327–77) Best known for his land victories over the French in the Hundred Years War, Edward was one of the few European monarchs of his day personally to command at sea. His victory at the battle of Sluys in 1340 preserved England from the threat of French invasion.

ELIZABETH I, QUEEN OF ENGLAND (REIGNED 1558–1603)

Henry VIII's daughter by his second wife, Anne Boleyn, Elizabeth's accession to the throne was highly improbable. Once there, she proved a shrewd and capable leader. Her intelligent use of her nautically-inclined subjects' aptitude for using armed violence for their – and her – enrichment laid the foundations for England's rise to world hegemony.

FARNESE, ALEXANDER, DUKE OF PARMA (1545–92), SPANISH MILITARY COMMANDER
Philip II's best general, Parma was brilliantly successful against the Dutch Protestants, but was repeatedly diverted by Philip's orders to intervene elsewhere just when victory seemed within his grasp. Had Philip heeded Parma's advice, he might well have prevailed in the Netherlands.

Don Garcia de Toledo, Marqués of Villafranca (1514–78), Spanish naval commander

A skilled strategist, Don Garcia was the architect of victory at Malta in 1565 as Philip II's Captain General of the Sea in the Mediterranean and viceroy of Sicily. He lived into retirement, and at Philip II's request proffered advice to Don Juan of Austria when the latter was appointed Captain General of the Fleet of the Holy League in 1571.

Don Juan of Austria (1547–78), Spanish military commander and Captain General of the Fleet of the Holy League (1571–73)

Bastard son of Emperor Charles V and half-brother of Philip II, he was groomed for positions of leadership by his father. His youth and inexperience notwithstanding, and despite the handicap of his illegitimate birth, he proved a gifted diplomat and inspirational leader, defeating the Turks at Lepanto. After the break-up of the Holy League, he was appointed Philip's commander-in-chief in Flanders and died there.

Gama, Vasco da (died 1542), Portuguese naval Commander

Scion of a noble Portuguese family, Da Gama commanded the first European expedition to reach India by sea and return with a cargo of spices. He returned to lead the Portuguese to victory over the forces of the Zamorin of Calicut of the Malabar Coast in 1503.

HENRY VIII, KING OF ENGLAND (REIGNED 1509–47) In addition to reforming the Church of England and marrying six wives, Henry strengthened the Royal Navy and – more important over the long haul – supported the development of cannon founding in England.

Heyn, Peiter Pieterszoon (1577–1629), Dutch admiral

Peit Heyn commanded the Dutch West Indies Company fleet that captured the entire home-bound Spanish treasure fleet in Matanzas Bay, Cuba, in 1628. The exploit was never repeated, but the proceeds funded the Dutch assault on Portuguese Brazil for nearly three decades.

Howard of Effingham, Lord Charles, High Admiral of England from 1586

Descended from the Howard High Admiral who died at the hands of the French in Brest Roads in 1513, Howard was a naval innovator, administrator and leader of remarkable competence. His reform of the Royal Navy and support of development of the racebuilt galleon were essential components of victory over the Armada in 1588.

Medina Sidonia, Alonso Pérez de Guzmán, 7th Duke of (1549–1615), Commander of the Invincible Armada

A successful commander on land – he organized and led the counter-attack against Drake's 1587 attack on Cádiz – and a competent administrator, his impeccable bloodlines led to his selection by Philip II to command the Armada of 1588.

Mehmet II, 'The Conqueror', Ottoman Sultan (reigned 1444–46, 1450–81)

A ruthless and brilliant intellect – he is said to have spoken seven languages including Italian and

Hungarian – he was one of the first monarchs to fully appreciate the strategic potential of heavy siege guns. The burden of taxation needed to support his expansive foreign policy helped produce a tumultuous succession struggle following his death in 1481.

Müezzenzade ('Son of the Caller to Prayers') Ali Pasha (died 7 October 1571), Ottoman Kapudan Pasha

Sultan Selim I's Kapudan Pasha after Piali Pasha's dismissal, he was defeated by Don Juan of Austria at Lepanto. Brave and capable he was crossed by bad luck ... or perhaps by orders from Selim II to fight come what may.

Oquendo, Don Antonio de (1577–1640), Spanish Admiral

A grandée with impeccable bloodlines, his reputation was burnished by victory over the Dutch at Abrolhos in 1631. Oquendo was a renowned horseman and devotee of the chivalric ideal ... which qualities contributed directly to his defeat at The Downs in 1639.

PHILIP II, KING OF SPAIN (REIGNED 1556–1600) The most powerful monarch of his day despite the division of his father's inheritance (Austria went to his German cousins), Philip ruled over the first empire on which the sun never set. His insistence on overseeing every detail of governance undercut his strategic designs in several critical instances. He displayed uncommonly good judgement in selecting key subordinates, but often failed to heed their warnings.

Piali Pasha, Ottoman Kapudan Pasha (served 1555–71)

A skilled naval commander, Piali's crushing defeat of the Habsburg fleet under Gian Andrea Doria at Djerba in 1560 was the most brilliant galley fleet victory of the early modern era. He was dismissed by Sultan Selim II for failing to prevent a Venetian relief expedition from reaching Famagusta in January 1571.

Pisani, Vettor, Venetian Capo di Mare (1377–82)

A popular hero, Pisani was a rare exception to the Venetian patrician ideal of self-effacing – albeit self-

aggrandizing – anonymity. He recovered from defeat at Pola (6 May 1379) to lead Venice to victory in the siege of Chioggia (22 December 1379 – 19 June 1380).

Sebastian I, King of Portugal (died 3 August 1578)

The last of Portugal's crusading Avis kings, Sebastian led his army to destruction at Alcazarquivir in Morocco, paving the way for Philip II's assumption of the Portuguese throne in 1580 and Spain's absorption of the Portuguese empire.

Selim II, 'The Sot', Ottoman Sultan (reigned 1566–75)

Placed on the throne by the machinations of his mother, Süleyman I's favourite wife Hurrem who is said to have had his half-brother Mehmet strangled, Selim ruled through his Grand Vizier Sokullu Mehmet Pasha. The sobriquet Sot was more likely a slur applied by opponents of his policies than an accurate commentary on the effects of his penchant for Cypriot wines.

Süleyman I, 'The Magnificent', Ottoman Sultan (reigned 1520–66)

Süleyman led his army to the gates of Vienna in 1529, marking the limits of westward Ottoman expansion on land. By the end of his long reign, he had effectively delegated the day-to-day business of governance to his grand viziers, of whom he had only nine. The last, Sokullu Mehmet Pasha, held the post from 1565 until 1579, well into the reign of Süleyman's grandson Murad III.

Toyotomi Hideyoshi, Ruler of Japan (ruled 1583–98)

Inheritor of a Japan united by his predecessor Oda Nobunaga (died 1582), Hideyoshi was a renaissance prince of boundless energy and ambitions. His armies were the largest and – until the Korean navy intervened – the best supplied of their day.

Tromp, Maarten Harpertszoon (1598–1653), Dutch Admiral

A masterful mariner and tactician, Tromp served as Peit Heyn's flag captain (the captain of Heyn's flagship), before rising to prominence as the greatest Dutch naval commander of his day. Blunt and practical, he was a ruthlessly realistic tactician. His use of line-ahead tactics off the French coast on 16 September 1639 accurately forecast the definitive tactics of the ship-of-the-line.

Uluj Ali Pasha, Turkish naval commander and Ottoman Kapudan Pasha (1572–87)

Of North African ghazi origins, Uluj Ali may have been the most skilled galley commander of his day. Commanding the Turkish left at Lepanto, he nearly salvaged victory from defeat. At the head of a large but in many respects defective galley fleet the next year he effectively stalemated the Christians and went on to recapture Tunis from the Spanish in 1574.

Vasa, Gustav I, King of Sweden (Reigned 1523–60)

Leader of the Swedish nobility in throwing off Danish rule and founder of the Vasa dynasty, Gustav was also the father of Swedish sea power. His policy of building up a strong, artillery-armed state navy was a harbinger of later developments in England, the Netherlands and France.

Venier, Sebastian, Venetian Capitano Generale da Mar (1570–71)

A crusty patrician in his 70s, Venier, commanded the Venetian contingent of the fleet of the Holy League in 1571. A staunch defender of Venetian prerogatives, his distrust of Gian Andrea Doria and the Genoese posed major problems for Don Juan of Austria. He fought with distinction at Lepanto.

YI SUN-SIN, KOREAN ADMIRAL (DIED 1598)

A brilliant naval tactician, he was a sound strategist who used guerrilla forces to shield his logistical base in south-western Korea from Japanese incursions. Dismissed for his unwillingness to suffer incompetent court favourites gladly after his signal victories of 1592, he was reappointed in the aftermath of disastrous defeat in 1597. Like Nelson, he died in his moment of victory.

FURTHER READING AND SOURCES

The literature of warfare at sea between the High Middle Ages and the beginning of the age of sea power is rich and varied, though with large gaps if we limit ourselves to works in English reasonably available to the general reader. Christopher Allmand, *The Hundred Years War: England and France at War,* c. 1300–c. 1450 (1988) covers naval operations competently, though *aficionados* with access to a good library will want to consult *The Chronicles of Jean Froissart*, available in many editions, for contemporary impressions. For Ming China's foray into trans-oceanic exploration, 1421–35, and the remarkable voyages of eunuch–admiral Cheng Ho, Joseph Needham *et al.*, *Science and Civilisation in China*, Vol. 4, *Physics and Physical Technology*, Part III: *Civil Engineering and Nautics* (1971), provide a fascinating account, though Needham and his colleagues have badly exaggerated the dimensions of the famous treasure ships by taking their technologically naïve sources at face value.

Ralph Payne-Gallwey, *The Crossbow*, published in 1903 and frequently reprinted, contains an appendix on the Turco-Mongol composite bow and is basic for individual bolt- and arrow-firing weapons. The definitive work on bronze cannon founding, which remained unchanged in its essentials from the late 1400s, is Carel de Beers, ed., *The Art of Gunfounding: The Casting of Bronze Cannon in the late 18th Century* (1991).

Frederic C. Lane, Venice, A Maritime Republic (1973), remains the best single volume on the subject ... although the reader will have to consult Daniele di Chinazzo's contemporary Cronica de la Guerra da Veniciani a Zenovesi fortunately available in a modern edition (Venice, 1958) -- for a narrative of the Chioggian War. Three excellent surveys that cover most or all of the period with which this book is concerned within their respective spheres are John H. Pryor, Geography, Technology and War: Studies in the Maritime History of the Mediterranean 649-1571 (1988, second edition 1992); Nicholas A. M. Rodger, The Safeguard of the Sea: A Naval History of Britain, 660–1649 (1997); and Jan Glete, Warfare at Sea, 1500-1650: Maritime Conflicts and the Transformation of Europe (2000). Pryor brilliantly fulfils the promise of his title and is particularly strong on geography and weather. Rodger's work avoids the Anglocentric bias usual in general surveys and competently addresses the evolution of warship design. Glete breaks new ground by incorporating the Baltic – previously terra incognito for naval historians, this one included – into the overall picture. His treatment of Portugal's rise and decline and of the Revolt of the Netherlands are particularly valuable.

Two volumes in the *History of the Ship* series by Conway Maritime Press, edited by Robert Gardiner, address the technical and operational aspects of their subjects in remarkable depth... and with appropriate qualifications where the evidence is incomplete or equivocal as it so often is. *The Age of the Galley: Mediterranean Oared Vessels since pre-classical Times* (1995), edited by John Morrison, contains an impressive array of chapters authored by experts in, to

cite but a few subjects: the evolution of war galley design, AD 500–1300 by John Pryor; the design of ancient galleys by John Coates; the mechanics of oared propulsion by Mauro Bondioli, René Barlet and André Zysberg; and the logistics of galley warfare by John Dotson. Cogs, Caravels and Galleons: The Sailing Ship, 1000–1650, edited by Richard W. Unger, features chapters on the cog as a cargo carrier by Detlev Ellmers; the cog as a warship by Timothy J. Runyan; the carrack and the evolution of the full-rigged ship by Ian Friel; the caravel and galleon by Martin Elbl and Carla Rahn Philips; and guns and gunnery by the author of this volume. William Ledyard Rodgers, Naval Warfare Under Oars, 4th to 16th Centuries: A Study of Strategy, Tactics and Ship Design, first published in 1940 and reprinted in 1967, bridges the transition from crossbow to gunpowder and is notable for clarity of technical explanations.

Charles W. C. Oman, A History of the Art of War in the Sixteenth Century, published in 1937 and recently reprinted (2000), though dated in its treatment of socio-economic factors, remains basic for European warfare on land. Oman addresses naval matters only in passing... with the important exception of the Ottoman assault on Christendom. His accounts of the great galley fights, Prevesa, Djerba and Lepanto, and of the sieges of Rhodes and Malta, though occasionally superseded in detail by later research are models of analytical clarity. Gregory Hanlon, The Twilight of a Military Tradition: Italian Aristocrats and European Conflicts, 1560-1800, contains first-rate accounts of the Habsburg-Ottoman struggle for control of the Mediterranean and the 1645-69 War of Crete. My own Gunpowder and Galleys: Changing Technology and Mediterranean Warfare at Sea in the Sixteenth Century (1974), addresses many of the issues and events covered in the present volume in greater detail. Errors detected by reviewers and additional research – the role of the Papal Captain General at Prevesa, the Muslim order of battle at Lepanto and a Turco-Mongol (or English) archer's sustained rate of fire – were corrected in the preceding pages.

No early modern naval campaign has produced more publications than the Invincible Armada of 1588, and of these the best is Colin Martin and Geoffrey Parker, *The Spanish Armada* (1988); the revised second edition (1999) contains important new insights. By contrast, there is almost nothing readily available in English on Toyotomi Hideyoshi's invasion of Korea. Mary Elizabeth Berry, *Hideyoshi* (1982) gives a useful strategic overview; Stephen Turnbull, *Samurai Warriors* (1987), explains the development of Japanese weaponry and methods of warfare. Jonathan J. Israel, *The Dutch Republic and the Hispanic World*, 1606–1661 (1982) gives a solid account of the latter stages of the Eighty Years War, but for the 1639 campaign and the Battle of the Downs, one must track down Charles R. Boxer, translator and editor, *The Journal of Maarten Harpertszoon Tromp, Anno 1639*, published in 1930 and not easily found.

Finally, *The Readers Companion to Military History*, edited by Robert W. Cowley and Geoffrey Parker provides a cornucopia of articles addressing in greater depth and detail many of the events, concepts, and persons referred to in the preceding pages.

INDEX

Figures in italic refer to captions

Abbas, Shah, 195 Abrolhos, battle of (1631), 162-3, 199 Aceh, 83 Aden, 83 Adriatic, 50, 130-31, 149 Aegean Sea, 72-3, 122 Africa, 32, 35, 77, 78, 87, 162, 191 Alba, Duke of, 154, 164, 214 Albuquerque, Affonso d', 83, 195, 214 Alcazarquivir, battle of (1578), 151, 154 Alexandria, 42 Algiers, 43, 128, 162 Ali Pasha, Müezzenzade, 124, 139, 141, 142, 143, 147, 148, 150, 216 Almirante, 102 Amalfi, 44 Amsterdam, 191, 194-5 Anatolia, 43, 45, 72 Anglo-Dutch wars, 164, 207-10 Anthony Anthony Roll, 94-5, 102, 103 Antonio, King of Portugal, 154, 155 Antwerp, 83, 168 Arabs, 32-3, 32, 33, 60, 77 Aragon, 42, 42, 43, 45 archery, 28-9, 37, 45, 54-5, 59-60, 73 Ark Royal, 175 Armada see Spain Armer, Albano d', 73 armour, 54, 76 arquebuses, 55, 58, 59, 60 artillery see guns Atahualpa, 127 Atlantic Ocean, 16, 35, 37, 39, 77, 78, 86, 87, 89–90, 152–3 Azores, 35, 77, 152–3, 154, 169 Aztecs, 114

Bacon, Roger, 22 baghlas, 33 Bahia, 194 Baker, Matthew, 159, 161 Balearics, 132-3 Balkans, 45, 72, 126, 135 ballistics, 69-70 Baltic, 16, 35, 37, 213 Baltic war (1563-70), 98-103, 101 Barbarigo, Agostin, 140, 141, 143-7, Barbarossa, Khaireddin, 127, 128-9, 129, 130-31, 132, 133, 139, 150, 214 Barbary corsairs, 162, 210 Barcelona, 42-3 barges, 23, 37 basilisks, 63, 64, 95, 115, 116 bastardas, 113, 116 Bayezid II, Sultan, 73, 127-8, 127, 214 Bazán, Don Álvaro de, 120-21, 140, 141, 148, 151, 154-5, 168, 169, 214 bergantines, 113, 114, 128

Bidoux, Prégent de, 116, 206 Biscay, Bay of, 37 Black Sea, 34, 43 boarding, 54, 76, 210 Bobadilla, Don Francisco de, 164 Bojador, Cape, 78 bombards, 41, 44, 50-1, 60-1, 61, 62, 63, 66, 76, 94 Bornholm, 2nd battle of (1565), 100-2 Braudel, Fernand, 141 Brazil, 62, 154, 162, 194-5, 210-11 Bremen cog, 86 Brest Roads, 115-16, 206 Breugel, Pieter the Elder, 103 Brondolo, 50, 51 Burak Re'is, 73, 74-5, 76 Bureau brothers, 44 Burgundy, 61 Byzantine empire, 16, 45, 60, 72

Cabral, Pedro, 79-80, 80-81 Cádiz, 160, 169, 169, 180-81, 181, 197 Calais, 164, 178 Calicut, 79-80, 92 camelos, 77, 82, 87 Canaries, 35, 77, 78, 168 cannonballs, 69-70 cannons, 44, 59, 60, 62-7, 63-5, 69 Capitana, 102, 113, 120-21 caravels, 6, 77, 80-81, 82, 86-9, 91, 97 Caribbean, 168, 191 carracks, 6, 37, 43, 80-81, 81, 82, 84, 88-93, 91-7, 118, 158 decline of, 118 forecastles, 61, 93-4 guns, 20-21, 41, 89, 94-7 battle of Zonchio, 73-6, 74-5 Carrera, Francesco, 46 carriages, artillery, 66, 68-9, 70, 70, 161 - 2castles, 41, 61 catapults, 60 Catherine de Medici, 154 Cem, Prince, 73 Ceylon, 33, 34, 210 Charles I, King of England, 163, 196, 197 - 8Charles V, Emperor, 100, 113, 126, 127, 129, 130, 132, 133, 214 Charles VIII, King of France, 63, 73, Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, 85 Cheng Ho, 34, 35, 214 China, 22, 33-4, 35, 36, 54, 60, 83,

183-4, 188, 190

Chios, 126, 135

Chinazzo, Daniele di, 49, 50

44-51, 46-9, 51, 54, 60

Choson dynasty, 183, 184

Chioggia, siege of (1379-80), 41, 43,

Christian II, King of Denmark, 99–100 Cicogna, Mattheo, 126 Cog Edward, 25 cogs, 23, 23, 25, 25, 37, 50, 61, 86, 86 Collado, Luis, 70-71 Colonna, Marc Antonio, 124-5, 136, 138, 139, 140, 140, 142, 149, 150, 214-15 Columbus, Christopher, 87, 89, 96 Companhia Geral do Comércio do Brasil, 62-3, 211 composite recurved bows, 59, 60, 76 Conrad III, Emperor, 45 Constantinople, 38, 39, 42, 43, 44, 60, 72, 133, 150, 151 Contarini, Andrea, 50, 51 Copenhagen, 99 La Cordelière, 95 Corfu, 129-31, 141 Coron, 76, 129 Correia, Gaspar, 82 corsairs, 43, 127-8, 162, 192, 210 Cortés, Hernán, 114 Couronne, 163-4 Crete, 72, 138, 151, 212 Crete, War of (1645-69), 124 Cristofer, 25, 28, 29 Croos, van, 211 crossbows, 29, 37, 38, 45, 53, 54-5, 58-9, 59, 61 Cruce, Willem, 84, 93-4 Crusades, 37, 38, 39, 42, 44, 72 Cruz, Juan Pantoja de la, 193 Cuba, 194 culverins, 61, 63-5, 69, 120 Cyprus, 45, 72, 126, 136-7, 149 Da Canal, Cristoforo, 115 Dalmatia, 126, 130 Dardanelles, 42, 45, 61 Daud Pasha, 73

Daud Pasha, 73 demicannons, 65, 71 Denmark, 24, 99–100, 100, 163, 206 dhows, 32, 33, 34, 82 Diaz, Bartolomeu, 78 Djerba, 133, 149 Doria, Andrea, 113, 129, 130–2, 131, 215 Doria, Gian Andrea, 122–4, 133, 136, 139, 140, 141, 147–8, 215 Doria, Luciano, 46 Doria, Piero, 48–50, 51, 215 Downs, battle of the (1639), 197–203,

198–203, 206–7 Drake, Sir Francis, 159, 160, 168, 169, 170, 174, 177, 215 Dreadnought, 160

Dunkirk, 196, 197, 200, 202 Dutch Revolt, 164–5, 191–203, 206

East Indiamen, 192

East Indies, 210	decline of, 210-11	on galleons, 160, 163
Edward III, King of England, 24, 25,	guns, 160, 163	on galleys, 106, 114–19, 120–21
27, 28, 100, 215	hulls, 158–9	iron guns, 61, 61, 63, 68, 71–2
Eervelt, Andries van, 194–5	sails, 158	shore batteries, 61
Egypt, 42, 59, 73, 82, 126, 190	Spanish Armada, 164–81, 171–9 galleys, 6, 20–21, 22, 23, 43, 43, 97,	watertight gun ports, 37–9, 95
Elizabeth I, Queen of England, 154, 160, 164, 165–6, 165, 181, 215	106–25, 107–12, 115–19, 122–5, 128,	Gustav Vasa, King of Sweden, 99, 217 Gyllende Lejon, 102
England, 24, 24, 44, 207	130, 180–81	Gyllende Lejon, 102
Anglo-Dutch Wars, 207–10	battle of Lepanto, 104, 124–5,	Habsburg dynasty, 20, 129, 133, 134,
artillery carriages, 68–9	126–51, 142–9	151, 196
battle of Sluys, 25–9, 26–8	as boarding platforms, 54	see also Spain
Channel battles, 115-16, 116-17	classical triremes, 108–9, 108	Hansan Strait, battle of (1592), 187-8,
galleons, 160-2, 161	crews, 120, 121-4	188–9
galliasses, 158	decline of, 211-13	Hanseatic League (Hansa), 24-5, 37,
'great ships', 34, 162-3, 163	hulls, 106, 115	45, 99
ships-of-the-line, 210	oars, 109–13	Hawkins, John, 102, 160, 174, 177
Spanish Armada, 156, 160, 164–81,	ports, 39–41	'hellburners', 168
171–9	siege of Chioggia, 45, 46, 49	Henry, King of Portugal, 151–4
weapons, 65, 66, 71, 71	speed, 120	Henry V, King of England, 34
English Channel, 23, 37, 97, 115–16,	squadrons, 119	Henry VIII, King of England, 68–9, 71,
116–17, 168, 169, 170–8, 172–7, 197–8, 212	weapons, 54, 106, 114–19, 120–21 galliasses, 158	102, 116, 216 Henry Grace à Dieu, 69
Erik XIV, King of Denmark and	Gama, Vasco da, 78–9, 78, 81–2,	Heyn, Piet, 194, 216
Sweden, 100, 102	215–16	Hideyoshi, Toyotomi, 182, 183–4, 185,
Escartim, Matias, 68	Genoa, 39, 40–41, 42–3, 77, 116, 118,	186, 188, 188, 217
escopetas, 55	132, 135	Hilliard, Nicholas, 156
Ethiopia, 83	battle of Sluys, 25, 28	Hoces, Don Lope de, 196-7, 202
	galleys, 23	Holbein, Hans the Younger, 55
falcons, 82	wars with Venice, 20, 44-51, 46-9,	Hollar, Wenzel, 192
Famagusta, 136–7, 141	51, 114	Holy League, 137–40, 137, 140
firearms, 55–9, 58	weapons, 71	Horn, Klas, 100–2
fireships, 172–3, 176–7, 179, 202	Germany, 44, 45, 55, 61, 98–9	Howard, Sir Edward, 116
Flanders, 25, 29, 61, 71, 103, 127, 150,	Ghengis Khan, 18	Howard of Effingham, Lord, 170, 170,
165, 168, 178, 192, 196, 211 Flota de Tierra Firme, 102	Giambelli, Federigo, 168	174, 175, 177, 178, 216
Flushing, 164, 206–7	Gibraltar, 192, 204, 206 Giron, Don Fernando, 169	hulks, 37, 86 hulls, 89–91
fluyts, 196–7	Giustinian, Thaddeo, 50	caravels, 77, 87
forecastles, 92, 93, 159	Glete, Jan, 36, 100	cogs, 86, 89
Foscarini, Giacomo, 149–50	Goa, 61, 83, 210	galleons, 158–9
France, 24, 44, 118, 207	Gomes Feio, Antonio, 66, 68	galleys, 106, 115
battle of Punta Delgada, 154-5	Good Hope, Cape of, 78-9, 87, 192	naos, 91
battle of Sluys, 25-9, 26-8	Grace Dieu, 34	size and tonnage, 36
Channel battles, 115–16, 116–17	grappling hooks, 60, 93-4	Hundred Years War (1337–1453), 24,
galleons, 163–4	Gravelines, battle of (1588), 179–80,	25–9, 26–8, 44, 45, 116
galleys, 23, 120, 212	203	Hungary, 46, 50, 76
Italian wars, 129, 132	Great Northern War (1700–21), 212–13	1 P 22
religious wars, 191	Greece, 43, 73, 108	ibn-Batuta, 33
Thirty Years War, 196, 207 watertight gun ports, 95	Greek fire, 16, 60 Griffin, 171	Iceland, 34 Incas, 127
watertight guil ports, 23 weapons, 59, 61, 63, 70	Grimani, Antonio, 73	India, 66, 77, 78, 78–81, 79–83, 87, 192
Francis I, King of France, 128, 129	Grimani, Marco, 131	Indian Ocean, 32, 33, 82–3, 87, 97, 126,
Frederick V, Elector of the Palatine,	Grip, 102	158
206–7	Guicciardini, Francesco, 44, 63	Indies, 162, 169, 195
Frederik II, King of Denmark, 100	Gujarat, 83	Indonesia, 33, 191
Frobisher, Martin, 174, 177	gunpowder, 16, 22, 44, 50-51, 54, 60-1,	Ireland, 180
Froissart, Jean, 21, 22, 25, 28, 29	94, 183	Isle of Wight, 177
fustas, 107, 113, 114, 128	guns, 17, 22, 60–6, 62–9	Italy, 20, 44–51, 55, 63, 72–6, 77, 126,
	artillery carriages, 66, 68–9, 70, 70,	130
gads (javelins), 21, 61	161–2	T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T
galea grosse, 111, 112, 113, 115, 136	ballistics, 69–70	James I, King of England, 181
galiots, 49, 60, 107, 113–14	bombards, 41, 44, 50–51, 60–61, 61,	James IV, King of Scotland, 96
galleasses, 168 galleons, 20–21, 22, 103, 158–64, 159,	62, 63, 66, 76, 94 bronze guns, 61–2, 63–5, 63, 66–9,	Japan, 16, 34, 59, 83, 182–90, 182–3, 186, 188–9
161–3	70–2, <i>71</i>	Japan, Sea of, 33
crews, 161	on carracks, 94–6	Java, 34
\$ - POST - POST A POST		Mary Control of Control

Jegermesther, 100-2 struggle for control of, 20, 43, 72, 76, battle of Zonchio, 72-6, 74-5 Jesuits, 83 126-51, 138-9 fall of Constantinople, 43, 44 Iesus, 34, 102-3 Mehmed II, Sultan, 43, 72, 73, 216 galleys, 120 Jiddah, 83 Mehmet Suluk, 143 struggle for control of John, King of Castile, 77 Mello, Dom Francisco Manuel de, 198, Mediterranean, 20, 43, 126-51, 199 Juan, Don of Austria, 124, 130, 138-43, 140, 147, 149-50, 215 mercenaries, 45 weapons, 59-60, 61, 66, 66, 71 Judith, 102 merchant shipping, 23, 32, 33, 33, 37, Owen, Robert and John, 71 jukungs, 33, 34 82-3, 99, 103 junks, 33, 34 Messina, 42, 122, 138, 139-40 Pacific Ocean, 193 Justin, Prince of Nassau, 178 Mexico, 114 Padua, 46, 50 Ming dynasty, 34, 35, 36, 54, 60, 83, Papal States, 118, 137-8, 137, 140 Kemal Re'is, 127-8 183, 184, 188, 190 Parker, Geoffrey, 160, 177 Parma, Alexander Farnese, Duke of, Kentish Knock, battle of the (1652), Minion, 102, 103 207 - 10missile weapons, 54-60 155, 165, 165, 168, 170, 178, 180-81, knarrs, 37, 106 Mocenigo, Alvise, 137 191, 215 Knights of St John, 43, 73, 129, 132-3, Modon, 76, 150 Patinir, Joachim, 91 Moluccas, 192, 194 Pavia, battle of (1525), 73 150, 211 Korea, 16, 33, 54, 182–3, 184–90, 186–9 Mongols, 18, 22, 184, 190 Pennington, Sir John, 197-8, 199, 200 Kyonnaeryang Island, 186 Monson, Sir William, 151, 155, 164 Pernambuco, 194–5 Montezuma, 114 perriers, 62, 65-6, 69, 120 La Coruña, 169, 170, 197 Persia, 126, 195 Mor, Anthonis, 166 Morea, 72, 76, 139, 212 languages, 16-20 Persian Gulf, 32, 34, 83, 126 lantern galleys, 113, 124 Morocco, 34, 44, 77, 151 Philip II, King of Spain, 127, 133, 137, Lepanto, 73, 76 Mortagne, siege of (1378), 59 138, 149-55, 164, 166, 168, 169, 172, Lepanto, battle of (1571), 70, 104, 120, Murad III, Sultan, 151 178, 191, 216 121, 122-3, 124-5, 126-51, 142-9, muskets, 55-8, 59, 60 Philip III, King of Spain, 191-2, 192-3 Muslims, 43, 77, 79-82, 118 Philip IV, King of Spain, 196 Likendeeler, 37 see also Ottoman empire Philip VI, King of France, 25 Philippines, 192 line-ahead tactics, 210 Lisbon, 154, 169 Nagashino, battle of (1575), 183 Piali Pasha, 133, 136, 137, 216 Livonian Knights, 100 naos, 35, 80-81, 87, 89, 91, 96, 158 Piombo, Sebastiano del, 131 longbows, 28, 45, 59, 59, 60 Naples, 42, 42, 44 pirates, 33, 34, 37, 43, 100, 184 longships, 37, 106 navigation, 77 Pisa, 44-5 Loredan, Andrea, 73 nefs, 23, 25 Pisani, Vettor, 46-8, 50, 216 Louis XIII, King of France, 163 Negroponte, 43, 72-3 Pius II, Pope, 72 Louis XIV, King of France, 207, 212 Netherlands, 20, 99, 127 Pius V, Pope, 137 Louis the Great, King of Hungary, Anglo-Dutch Wars, 207-10 Playa Honda, 193-4 East Indiamen, 192 45 - 6Plymouth, 170-2 Lübeck, 37, 99, 100, 102 galleons, 162-3 Poccetti, Bernardino, 132 wars with Portugal, 210-11 Polo, Marco, 33 wars with Spain, 20, 151, 164-5, Macao, 83, 210 Portland, battle of (1653), 210 Madagascar Channel, 34, 78, 79 191-203, 206 ports, 39-40, 41-2, 86 Madeira, 35 Portsmouth, battle of (1545), 116-17 weapons, 66, 67, 69, 71 Maderias, 77 Niña, 89 Portugal, 126, 135, 207 Magellan, Ferdinand, 159 Nobunaga, Oda, 183 battle of Malabar coast, 78-9, 79-82 Mainwaring, Sir Henry, 199 Normandy, 29, 44 caravels, 77, 87, 97 Malabar coast, battle of (1503), 78-9, Normans, 37 carracks, 89, 90-91, 97 North Africa, 43, 60, 118, 126, 128, exploration, 35, 77-83 Malacca, 83, 135, 192, 193, 195, 210 129, 151 galleons, 62, 158, 161, 168 Malacca, Straits of, 32, 33, 34 North Sea, 37, 197 language, 16-17 Malays, 33 Norway, 24, 37, 99 and Japan, 182-3, 183 Malta, 129, 132-3, 134, 135, 151 Nuestra Señora del Rosario, 173, 174 Spain's claim to, 151-4 Mamelukes, 18, 42, 59, 73, 82, 83, 126, spice trade, 192 190 oared warships see galleys wars with Dutch, 210-11 Manila, 193-4 Olympias, 108 weapons, 64, 66, 66, 68, 71, 77-8 Manzikert, battle of (1071), 60 Oquendo, Don Antonio de, 162-3, 191, Prester John, 77, 83 197, 198, 199, 202, 207, 216 Marcello, Alvise, 76 Prevesa, battle of (1538), 130-2, 132, Martin, Colin, 177 Ormuz, 83, 195 150, 158 projectiles, 62, 69-70, 77-8 Mary Rose, 68, 69, 94-5, 96-7, 115, 116 Otranto, 73 Medina Sidonia, Duke of, 154, 164, Ottoman empire, 16, 45, 83, 118, Puguet, Pierre, 124-5 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 177-80, 216 211 - 12Punta Delgada, battle of (1582), 151-5 Mediterranean, 34, 35, 86, 89-90 and the Azores, 152-3 Pusan, 184, 186, 187-8, 190

battle of Lepanto, 104, 124, 126,

141-51, 142-9

Pyongyang, 184, 188

galleys, 16, 37, 39-43, 97, 106-15,

107-11, 115, 116-25, 118-19, 122-5

quadrireme alla sensile, 113 conquistadors, 58, 114 Van de Velde, Willem the Elder, 70-71, quinquireme alla sensile, 121 empire, 166-7 galleons, 158, 159, 161 Van de Velde, Willem the Younger, 163, rams, 108, 108, 109, 110 galleys, 119-24, 119, 122, 133-4, 211 196 Holy League, 137-40, 137, 140 Raphael, 107 Vasa, 158, 159, 163 Real, 147 and Portugal, 154 Vasari, Giorgio, 122-3 Red Lion, 207 Spanish Armada, 69, 103, 156, 160, Venice, 30, 61, 116, 118, 211-12, 212 Red Sea, 32, 34, 83, 195 161, 164-81, 171-9 Arsenal, 136, 136, 158 Requesens, Don Luis de, 142 struggle for control of battle of Lepanto, 104, 124, 126, Revenge, 177 Mediterranean, 20, 126-51, 138-9 141-51, 142-9 Rhodes, 43, 73, 126, 129 wars with Netherlands, 20, 151, battle of Zonchio, 72-6, 74-5 Richelieu, Cardinal, 163, 196, 197, 207 164-5, 191-203, 206 galleys, 107, 109, 111, 112, 115, 120, Roccaforte, 114 weapons, 58-9, 71, 73 121, 122, 124, 124 Rodger, Nicholas, 29, 116, 163 Spice Islands, 33, 192 Holy League, 137-40, 137, 140 Roman empire, 108, 110 spice trade, 33, 77, 79, 80-81, 83, 192 Levant convoy, 114 Royal Prince, 162, 163, 164, 207 Spinola, Federico, 211 seizes Constantinople, 38, 39 Rud, Otto, 100-2 Stockholm, 99 struggle for control of rudders, 86, 87, 90, 91, 110 Storck, Abraham, 212-13 Mediterranean, 20, 42-3, 136-51 Russia, 212-13 Strozzi, Philip, 154–5 wars with Genoa, 20, 44-51, 46-9, Süleyman I, Sultan, 126, 129-30, 129, Safavid dynasty, 126, 151 132, 135, 151, 217 weapons, 41, 59-60, 66, 70 Venier, Sebastian, 124-5, 138, 140, 140, sails, 89 Sultana, 147 Sung dynasty, 33, 60 142, 147, 149-50, 217 cogs, 86 galleons, 158 Sweden, 98-102, 98-9, 101, 158, 206, Verbeecq, Cornelisz, 199 lateen sails, 87, 89, 110, 113 212 - 13Veronese, Paolo, 147 naos, 91 Vienna, 126, 151 St Erik, 100-2 Taiwan, 195 Vietnam, 18, 83, 190 St Louis, 163 Takeda clan, 183 Vikings, 35, 37, 77, 86, 106 samurai, 183, 187 tarettes, 114 Visscher, Claes Jans, 171 San Juan, 161 Tenedos, 45 VOC (Dutch East India Company), San Juan de Ulloa, 102 Tenochtitlán, 114 192, 194-5, 211 San Martin, 179 Terceira, 119, 155 Vroom, Hendrik, 172-3, 180-81, 204, San Mateo, 155 Teutonic Knights, 100 San Salvador, 174 Texcoco, Lake, 114 Santa Catarina do Monte Sinai, 90-91, Tinos, 122 war galleys see galleys Tintoretto, 38 warships, size and tonnage, 36 Santa Maria, 89, 96 Toledo, Don Garcia de, 133, 215 see also individual types of warship Santíssimo Sacramento, 62-3, 65-8 tonnage, 36 Warwick, Earl of, 89 São Miguel, 154, 155 trade, 39 Warwick Roll, 61, 88, 93 Scotland, 96, 180 Baltic, 37 weapons, 54-72, 56-7 Sebastian I, King of Portugal, 151, broadside ordnance, 96 Hanseatic League, 98-9 spices, 33, 77, 79, 80-81, 83, 192 crew-served weapons, 60 216 - 17War of Chioggia, 44 Selim II, Sultan, 135-6, 135, 217 edged weapons, 54 Seven Years War (1756-63), 20 firearms, 55-9, 58 Tre Kroner, 163 treasure fleets, 34, 35 Seville, 36 on galleys, 106, 114-19, 120-21 Seymour, Lord Henry, 170, 178 Treviso, 50, 51 missiles, 54-60 ship-building techniques, 89-91 Trinity, 68-9 rams, 108, 108, 109, 110 ships, fully-rigged, 89-90, 91 Tripoli, 129, 133 see also guns ships-of-the-line, 86, 163, 198, 210, 211, triremes, 108-9, 108 West India Company, 194, 211 213 triremes alla sensile, 110-13, 111, 120, White, Peter, 199 Sicilian Vespers, War of (1282–7), 39, 121, 124 Wieringen, Cornelis Claesz van, 206–7 Tromp, Maarten, 196, 197-8, 198, Winchelsea, 23 Sicily, 39, 42, 50, 133, 134, 161 With, Witte de, 198, 199 199-203, 202-3, 210, 217 Sluys, battle of (1340), 14, 22–9, 26–8, truck carriages, 68-9, 70, 161-2 Wön Kyun, Admiral, 186, 188, 190 Tunis, 43, 113, 127, 129, 130, Sodre, Vicente, 78, 82 150, 151 Yi Sun-sin, Admiral, 182, 184–8, 187–9, Turner, J.M.W., 202-3 Sokullu Mehmet Pasha, 149 190, 217 Sourdis, Admiral de, 196, 197 turtle ships, 184, 187, 187, 190 Yüan dynasty, 33-4 Southeast Asia, 33-4, 35 Sovereign of the Seas, 163, 163, 164 Uluj Ali Pasha, 130, 139, 142, 147-8, Zane, Girolamo, 136, 138 Spain, 36, 77, 118 149-50, 151, 217 Zealand, 99 and the Azores, 152-3, 154-5 Zeno, Carlo, 48, 49, 50 battle of the Downs, 198-203, Valdés, Don Pedro de, 174 Zonchio, battle of (1499), 66, 72-6, 74-5,94 199-201, 207 Valona, 114

Valturio, Roberto, 52

battle of Lepanto, 126, 141-51

Zurbaran, Francisco de, 169

PICTURE CREDITS

Every effort has been made to contact the copyright holders for images reproduced in this book. The publishers would welcome any errors or omissions being brought to their attention.

Scala Endpapers, pp. 30, 40-41, 43, 56-7, 80-81, 104, 107, 119, 123, 131, 132, 134, 147, 165 (bottom), 166, 167, 168, 193, 213; Sonia Halliday Photographs pp. 6, 16, 32, 129, 135; British Library pp. 14, 17, 23 (top), 59, 88, 111; Bridgeman Art Library: pp. 21, 28, Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris; p. 24, British Library; p. 36 Museo de America, Madrid; pp. 38, 51 Palazzo Ducale, Venice; p. 42 Museo Nazionale di San Martino, Naples; p. 52 Library of Congress Washington, DC; pp. 58, 74-5, 180-81 Private Collection; pp. 109, 122 Museo Storico Navale, Venice; pp. 124-5 Musée du Vieux Port, Marseille; p. 182 Musée Guimet, Paris; p. 191 The Stapleton Collection; pp. 194-5 Johnny van Haeften, London; pp. 202–3 Trustees of Sir John Soane's Museum, London; pp. 206–7 Frans Hals Museum, Haarlem/Index; AKG pp. 86, 89, 130, 140, 142-3, 156, 172-3; Ancient Art & Architecture Collection p. 108 (top); National Maritime Museum, Greenwich pp. 23 (bottom), 70, 91, 163, 176–7, 196, 198, 199, 201, 210, 211; Art Archive pp. 48, 55, 84, 92–3, 94–5, 98, 118, 127, 137, 162, 165 (top) 171, 178-9, 192, 197; Author's Collection pp. 61, 64, 66, 71; Mary Evans Picture Library pp. 108, 110, 176; Museo Storico Navale, Venice pp. 115, 128, 136, 149; Portsmouth City Museums pp. 116-17; Museo Correr, Venice p. 148; Corbis/Bettmann p. 160, 170 Historical Picture Archive, 185 Asian Art & Archeology, Inc, 187 Kevin R. Morris; Rijksmuseum, Amsterdam p. 204. The map of Rethimnon on p. 212 is reproduced from Olfert Dapper's Zeekaerte van de Archipel en Archipelesche Eylanden, Amsterdam, 1688 (Dutch text edition).

Drawings on the title page and on pages 25, 33, 96, 97, 103, 111, 112, 159, 161 and 187 are by Peter Smith and Malcolm Swanston of Arcadia Editions Ltd.

Drawings on pages 62, 63, 65, 66, 67, 68 and 69 are by Peter Harper, from originals by the author.

ENDPAPER: A near contemporary painting of the battle of Lepanto from the Venetian school. While the colours are no doubt brighter than they were in reality, it beautifully depicts the chaos of battle.

CASSELL'S History of Warfai

\$29.95 Can. \$46.95

A MULTI-VOLUME HISTORY OF WAR AND WARFARE FROM ANCIENT TO MODERN TIMES

GENERAL EDITOR JOHN KEEGAN



The turn of the sixteenth century saw the start of a revolution in warfare at sea — a revolution long in the making, remarkably swift once begun. The driving force was gunpowder, the principal agents the galley and galleon.

